**State Board of Forestry and Fire Protection**

**Review of Threatened or Impaired Watershed Regulations under the California State Forest Practice Rules:**

# Scientific Literature Review of Forest Management Effects on Riparian Function for Anadromous Salmonids

**Staff Report October 2008**

Riparian photos courtesy Pete Cafferata, CAL FIRE; adult coho salmon, Albion River, Mendocino County, CA, courtesy Tom Daugherty, NMFS Fisheries Biologist

Prepared by: Christopher Zimny
Board Staff, Regulation Coordinator,
California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection

# Table of Contents

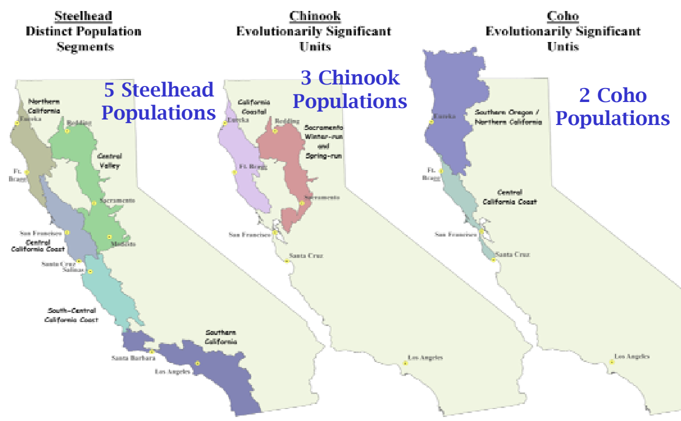
State Board of Forestry and Fire Protection

Review of Threatened or Impaired Watershed Regulations under the California State Forest Practice Rules:

## Scientific Literature of Forest Management Effects on Riparian Function for Anadromous Salmonids:

October 2008

**I. Overview Scientific Literature Review:** The California Forest Practice Rules (FPRs) for protection of watersheds with anadromous salmonid species, termed the "Threatened or Impaired Watershed" rules (T/I rules), are under review by the State Board of Forestry and Fire Protection (Board). These rules establish requirements for Timber Harvest Plan disclosures and operational practices permitted under the FPRs for commercial timber harvesting on private lands where state or federally listed anadromous salmonid species (Coho salmon, Chinook salmon and Steelhead) are present or can be restored. The T/I rules are being reviewed for determining their adequacy in protecting the species, meeting the Forest Practice Act, and to establish permanent rules as the current rules expire on January 1, 2010.




In California there are 10 Populations of Salmon and Steelhead Listed as Federally Threatened or Endangered with Extinction

The Board's Forest Practice Committee will conduct the review and has drafted a rule review process. (see Appendix 1 or http://www.fire.ca.gov/CDFBOFDB/pdfs/TI_ReviewProcess_042108.pdf ). The review process involves evaluating groups of similar rules against specific criteria. Central to the review is evaluation of the rules with current science literature. The FPC intends to complete the review by March 2009. Following the review the Board will begin any regulatory amendment procedures. Final adoption of any regulatory amendments would be completed by October 2009.

Information from current scientific literature on forest management effects on salmonids is an important part of the T/I rule review process because the Board intends to make its regulatory amendment decisions based on credible and current science. To facilitate the understanding of current science, the Board conducted a review of recent scientific literature on forest management effects on riparian zones that support anadromous salmonids. The Board commissioned a highly qualified consortium of contractors, Sound Watershed Consulting, to conduct the literature review. The literature review resulted in summaries of literature reviewed, answers to "Key Questions", and a synthesis of literature review findings for riparian functions. The Board will use these results to evaluate the existing rules and the effects of commercial timber operations on anadromous salmonids.

The literature review can be found at: http://www.soundwatershed.com/BOF.htm

(More background information on the literature review can be found at http://www.fire.ca.gov/CDFBOFDB/board/board_proposed_rule_packages.aspx under topic Threatened or Impaired Watersheds (T/I) Literature Review

The literature review process was a pilot for developing science-based information for regulation development. It was intended to be highly transparent involving stakeholders, scientists, and other responsible government agencies. The process is intended to be a model for future projects, help minimize total life cycle cost of regulatory implementation, and improve protection of salmonids.

**II. Technical Advisory Committee:** The Board has appointed a Technical Advisory Committee (TAC) to serve as its scientific advisors during the literature and its presentation to the Board. The TAC was appointed in September 2006, and was selected from a wide range of world-renowned scientists from universities, public agencies and private consultants from the west coast of the USA. Board member Gary Nakamura of UC Berkeley Extension Services was appointed Chair of the TAC, to oversee the TAC, lead decision-making, and contribute to the scientific discussion. The Board assigned Christopher Zimny, Board staff person and CAL FIRE Regulations Coordinator to the TAC. Primary duties for staff were to organize meetings, facilitate TAC members' needs, document TAC products, prepare contracts, ensure contractual obligations were met, and be the contractor's sole point of official contact. Listed below are the TAC members:

**Ms. Charlotte Ambrose**, Biologist, National Marine Fisheries Service, Santa Rosa. Ms. Ambrose is the North Central California Coast Recovery Domain Coordinator and is responsible for the development of federal recovery plans for chinook, coho salmon and steelhead. She is currently the NMFS liaison to the Board of Forestry and has been working on forestry issues for NMFS since 1999.

**Mr. Curt Babcock,** Senior Environmental Scientist, California Department of Fish and Game, Redding. Mr. Babcock is the Supervisor the Northern Region Timberland Conservation Program.

**Dr. Marty Berbach*,** Wildlife Biologist, California Department of Fish and Game, Sacramento. Dr. Berbach is the DFG liaison for forestry practices, has worked on forestry issues since 1991 and is currently specializing on forest bio-politics. (*Currently with the Department of Water Resources).

**Mr. Pete Cafferata,** Forest Hydrologist, California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection, Sacramento. Mr. Cafferata, a Registered Professional Forester, is the lead staff person for the Board of Forestry and Fire Protection's Monitoring Study Group, which has developed several programs to evaluate the effects of timber operations on water quality in California.

**Dr. Ken Cummins,** Professor Fishery Biology, Humboldt State University, Arcata. Dr. Cummins is the Co-Director, Institute for River Ecosystems, and Senior Advisory Scientist for the California Cooperative Fishery Research Unit.

**Dr. Brian Dietterick,** Professor Hydrology and Watershed Management, California Poly State University, San Luis Obispo. Dr. Dietterick is the Director of the Swanton Pacific Ranch of the College of Agriculture and Natural Resources.

**Dr. Cajun James,** Principal Research Scientist for Sierra Pacific Industries, Whitmore. Dr James is conducting long-term watershed research studies in the Sierra Nevada and Southern Cascades to determine the effectiveness of different riparian buffer characteristics on biological diversity, near stream microclimate, and water quality.

**Mr. Gaylon Lee,** Senior Engineering Geologist, State Water Resources Control Board, Sacramento. Mr. Lee is the SWRCB liaison for forest and rangeland practices, and has worked on forestry issues since 1986. He led initiation of the State's program to monitor implementation and effectiveness of non-Federal forest practices.

**Mr. Gary Nakamura, TAC Chair,** Forestry Specialist, University of California Cooperative Extension, Redding. Mr. Nakamura is Co-Director of the UC Center for Forestry, which serves forest landowners, professional foresters and resource managers, teachers, students, and interested publics with an array of forestry education programs. Mr. Nakamura is Registered Professional Forester.

**Dr. Sari Sommarstrom,** Watershed Scientist, Sari Sommarstrom & Associates, Etna. Dr. Sommarstrom has consulted on a variety of watershed subjects since 1976, with one specialty being in sediment-related effects and mitigations.

**Dr. Kate Sullivan,** Manager of Hydrology and Aquatic Sciences, Humboldt Lumber Company, Scotia. Dr. Sullivan leads the watershed science and monitoring programs on Humboldt Lumber Company lands in Northern California.

**Dr. William Trush,** CEO and Senior Ecologist, McBain & Trush Inc., Arcata. Dr. Trush is an adjunct professor to the Humboldt State University Fisheries Department, directs a stream restoration plan for Los Angeles Department of Water and Power, and is a member of the County of Humboldt Extraction Review Team.

**Dr. Michael Wopat ,** Senior Engineering Geologist, California Geological Survey, Redding. State-registered Professional Geologist, State-Certified Hydrologist and Engineering Geologist (CEG). Dr. Wopat has been the CGS member of the Redding Inter-Agency THP Review Team since 1999, focusing mainly on issues related to geomorphology (mass movement and erosion) and hydrology.

**Mr. Christopher Zimny,** TAC staff, Sacramento**.** Mr. Zimny is the Regulations Coordinator for the California Department of Forestry and Fire and is a staff person for the Board of Forestry and Fire Protection .

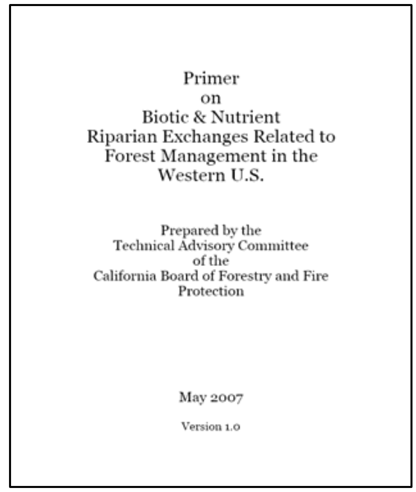
The TAC's purpose and actions were established by the Board in "Charter" established on October 26, 2006 (See Appendix 2). Fundamental to the Charter was the establishment of values and groundrules for the TAC. These included:

- Focusing on science issues, not regulatory or policy issues;
- Objectively serves the Board and the public's interest, with recognition of the need for a balanced evaluation of relevant scientific literature;.
- Work together in a collegial manner, seeking consensus on matters reported to the Board.

The TAC's primary charge was to organize the literature review, ensure the literature review is adequately completed, and advise the Board on its findings. Specific actions by the TAC include recommendations for the development of the contract Scope of Work (SOW) and Key Questions, preparation of the initial list of literature to be reviewed, and development of background "Primers" for each riparian function that establishes a baseline of past science information. The TAC works through the Board Contract Representative to provide this technical assistance and oversee successful completion of the literature review.

The TAC met approximately 25 times as a team in ether team meetings in Redding or Sacramento or via conference call. All meetings were open and available for public participation, and officially noticed to a wide group of stakeholders to encourage participation.

Vital leadership and work products were provided by the TAC leading to the delivery of the final SWC literature review. Of great value to the Board was the development of the existing background knowledge of science on forest management effects on riparian function called “Primers”. (See Appendix 3)


Primer
on
Biotic & Nutrient
Riparian Exchanges Related to
Forest Management in the
Western U.S.

Prepared by the
Technical Advisory Committee
of the
California Board of Forestry and Fire
Protection

May 2007

Version 1.0

Over the past 40 years, an extensive and rich scientific literature has developed regarding all aspects of the interaction of riparian forests with streams and their biota. There are many widely understood and non-controversial points of understanding that represent the state of knowledge of riparian forest management. There remain aspects of the physical or biological processes that are less well understood, as well as regional patterns pertinent to California that are not as well documented.

In view of the scientific history, the TAC has developed a set of “Primers” for each riparian function that provides a summary of the general status of knowledge of transfers between the biotic and abiotic factors within streams and their adjacent forests. These Primers are intended to set forth the generally agreed upon scientific understanding of forest management effects on the Riparian Exchange Functions. They are themselves a resource to the Board in its consideration of the T/I rules. With the Primers accepted as the basis for understanding, the literature review by the Contracting Entity can focus on elements of these topics that are less well studied, explore unresolved questions or management relationships, and present on information that pertains specifically to California forests, streams, and biota. The TAC’s task in this regard has been made easier by several excellent and comprehensive review articles that have been published on these subject areas in recent years.

In addition to the Primers representing the TAC’s consensus opinion of current widely accepted knowledge of forest management effects on the Riparian Exchange Function, they are a baseline information report to minimize review of literature that is well understood. The Primers were also used to generate “Key Questions”. Key Questions were developed when there is not broad consensus or widely accepted knowledge on the relevant topics. See list of Key Questions in Appendix 4.

Finally, the TAC has been documenting points of general interest and TAC member observations regarding the TAC scope and process in a “Meta Primer”. The Meta-Primer is a repository for issues and comments outside the scope of the TAC riparian zone forest management practices, providing context for the literature review and TAC process This Meta Primer will be part of the TAC's final report to the Board, providing context for this literature review effort.

The value and expertise brought to the Board by the TAC members can not be understated. The TAC worked tirelessly, with the sole intention of providing quality scientific information to the Board.  The project simply could not have been completed without them.  The success of the pilot model established by the TAC highly validates the need for future scientific review team to support Board decisions.

## III. Literature Review Request for Proposal (RFP), contracting consultants, and contract implementation

**RFP:** The TAC guided the Board in developing a RFP that would lead to a literature review focused on forest management effects on five “Riparian Exchange Functions” that support anadromous salmonids in California. Use of the Riparian Exchange Function concept recongnizes that riparian areas support continuous ecosystems processes and function, and these functions change in response to biotic and abiotic inputs.  While these functions are all connected processes in the riparian ecosystem, focusing on effects to specific functions provides a manageable format for review and analysis of scientific literature.

The five Riparian Exchange Functions follow:

- Biotic and Nutrient
- Coarse Woody Debris
- Heat
- Sediment
- Water

Focusing on forest management effects on riparian function was given priority by the Board because of the potential direct impacts to salmonids that can occur from operations in riparian zones: tree harvesting in buffer strips, equipment encroachment, road crossings, buffer strip surface vegetation disturbance from site preparation or prescribed burning, riparian restoration, and water drafting. Additionally, the existing T/I rules have substantive prescriptive requirements for these activities and ensuring the rules adequately protect the species, are enforceable and do not unreasonably burden landowners is a primary goal for the rule review.

Although the literature review focuses on forest management effects directly associated with or occurring in riparian areas, the Board recognizes the need for reviewing other literature that informs on forest management effects on salmonids.  Literature that addresses upland harvesting, cumulative effects, monitoring, geologic stability, and forest roads are all pertinent for this rule review. However, while literature on these factors would provide valuable information for protection of salmonid species, the extensive breathe of literature needed for review these topics are currently beyond the financial capacity of the Board.

The literature review RFP was focused on accomplishing by the contractor several “Tasks” as follows:

Task 1.  Review of Primer and assess preliminary list of literature
Task 2    Conduct literature review
Task 3    Provide a synthesis of literature reviewed
Task 4.   Present final project and participate in technical forum.

Detailed information on the Tasks as presented in the RFP is shown below:

### Administrative

Meet with Board representatives by phone or in person periodically during the contract at an estimated rate of two times per month for purposes of Project coordination, progress check, and quality control. The principal scientific expert(s) (Proposer, Proposer's employee, or any subcontractors) are required to complete at least 90% of the following Tasks. Proposal should clearly indicate that expert will be assigned time to complete at least 90% of the Tasks.

### Task 1. Identify and obtain relevant literature to be reviewed.

The goal of this Task is to ensure that a comprehensive compendium of literature is obtained and reviewed and all literature is relevant to the goal of the Project. The Board intends to include a wide breadth of literature as part of the review. This includes peer reviewed, nonpeer reviewed (certain gray literature including monitoring results, pilot projects, resource assessments, and conference proceeding etc.), and master's and doctoral research.

Additionally, the TAC found it necessary for efficiency to narrow the potential scope of literature to be reviewed. To help this goal, the TAC has written a "Primer" of well agreed upon scientific information regarding the riparian function which is intended to provide a starting point for literature review. The Board does not want to review literature that has wide consensus among professionals. The purpose of the Literature Review is to review articles that contribute knowledge to topics for which there is not well agreed upon scientific information. By establishing a "starting point' the Board desires to avoid reviewing unnecessary literature, and focus on literature that reveals new findings, refutes conventional knowledge, or supports hypotheses.

Task 1.1 Review the Primer for the respective riparian function. Provide suggestions for edits that clarify, refute, or add relevant information contained in the Primer. Upon approval by the Project Representative, revise the Primer to reflect changes.

Task1.2 Prepare a written assessment of the preliminary lists of literature compiled by the Board for each Riparian Exchange Function. The assessment shall address completeness, relevance and adequacy towards meeting the goal of the Project, and contribution towards answering the Key Questions. Identify any listed literature that is not relevant to the Project Goal. Use the: Literature Screening Criteria (see Appendix 6), for selecting articles and provide written documentation of criteria used for inclusion or exclusion of articles. The assessment should use the revised Primer as a basis for addressing the completeness of the list.

Task 1.3 Provide any additional literature up to 10% above those initially listed

Task 1.4 Meet with TAC to finalize initial list of literature to be reviewed. (Appendix 5)

**Task 2. Perform review of scientific literature**

The Goal of this Task is to perform review of scientific literature identified in Task 2 (Identify and obtain relevant literature to be reviewed) for each Riparian Exchange Function. The literature review documentation should focus on providing answers and information for the Key Questions for each riparian function (see Appendix 4). Key Questions are generally formatted with "overarching Key Questions" followed by "sub-Key Questions". The sub-Key Questions are written to generate detailed answers for specific components of the overarching Key Question.

Task 2.1 Review the literature for each article listed in the initial list of articles (See Appendix 5) and document the review as shown on the Literature Review Form. Focus on providing answers and information for the Key Questions for each riparian function.

Task 2.2 Provide a compilation of all literature reviews in written and CD format.

**Task 3: Provide a synthesis of literature reviewed for each Key Question.**

The required literature reviews outlined in Task 2 will result in many articles individually reviewed for each Key Question for each Riparian Exchange Function. To help the Board better understand the full breath of the articles reviewed, the Proposer will provide a synthesis of all articles reviewed for each Key Question under each Riparian Exchange Function.

Task 3.1 Provide all findings and conclusions from articles reviewed for each Key Question. Include the contractor's statement, perspective and conclusions, supported by the literature reviews in this project, on the status of scientific knowledge for the Key Question. Such conclusion would include appropriate management action for riparian buffers widths necessary to ensure proper function and other management actions valuable to sustaining riparian functions.

Task 3.2 Extent to which literature findings lead to a uniform conclusion, and are consistent or inconsistent with each other.

Task 3.3 Extent to which aggregate literature findings are generally reliable and specifically applicable to the Key Question.

Task 3.4 Topics or answers to Key Questions for which additional research is needed to better answer questions or achieve Goal of Project.

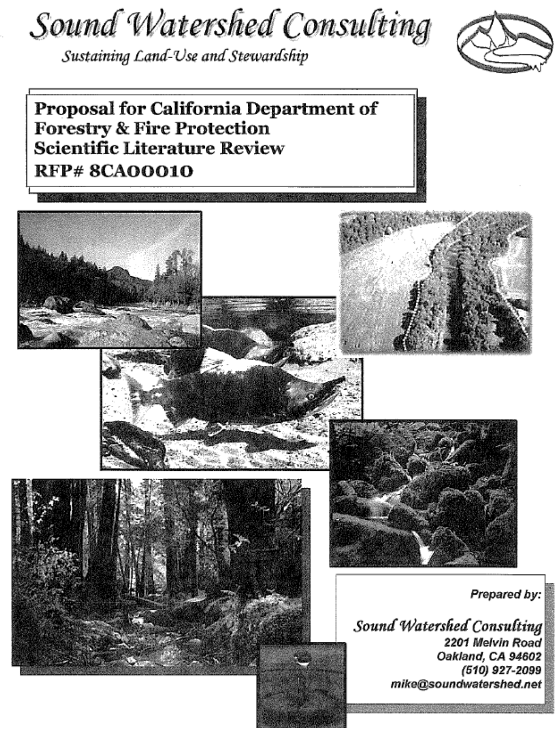
Task 3.5 Provide a compilation of all Literature Review Forms in written and CD format.

**Task 4: Prepare and present final submission of all Project Tasks**

Task 4.1 Upon completion of the Project, provide two printed copies and CDs of the entire project deliverables. The completed project report shall have and be organized with a cover, table of contents, Executive Summary and all other required deliverables.

Task 4.2 Upon completion of the Project, report in person, as assigned, on the outcome of the Project. The oral presentation shall include a written Executive Summary of the entire Project; overview of the methodology used by the Proposer, summary of Task 3.

Task 4.3 Appear in person, be available to respond to questions, and participate in the Board's "Technical Specialist Forum". Attendance at the Forum will be limited to an 8-hour period.




The "Request for Proposal" was initially competitively advertised in July of 2007, but bids were rejected by the Board due to expense of bids and lack of appropriate expertise assigned to Tasks. The RFP was reformulated to reduce costs, clarified the requirement for specific expertise, and resolicited in December 2007. The contract was successfully awarded in April, 2008, and completed in September, 2008. The California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection (CAL FIRE) provided the funding for the contract which totaled $126,000. The awarded Sound Watershed Consulting (SWC) Request for Proposal is found in Appendix 7.

**Consultants**: The science literature review was contracted to Sound Watershed Consulting of Oakland, California, led by Mike Liquori, who has assembled a team of highly qualified experts. The consulting team consists of Dr. Doug Martin, a fisheries biologist who is the active co-chair of the Washington State Forest Practices Board Science Committee; Dr. Bob Coats, a hydrologist with long-term research interests in hydrology and ecological effects of land management; and Dr. Lee Benda, a world-renowned geomorphologist with extensive knowledge of forest landscapes in California. A full discussion of the contractors backgrounds are found in Appendix 7: Sound Watershed Consulting Request for Proposal, November 2007.

The SWC methodology for the review of the literature was based on a collaborative approach. The team reviewed nearly 200 recent science articles, including 150 articles identified by the TAC and nearly 50 others identified by the contractor that added context to the Key Questions. Members of the contracting teams divided the riparian functions articles among team members according to the member's primary scientific specialty. SWC members read articles, drafted initial responses to Key Questions and, as a group, edited draft work products for the TAC and BOF contracting representative's initial consideration.

SWC also developed, presented and discussed with the TAC and the BOF representative various methodologies to complete the synthesis of the literature review articles (Task 3). The TAC, BOF rep and SWC agreed upon developing the literature synthesis that represented the important conclusion of all article across all functions instead of across a single function. This presentation method was deemed preferable as much of the literature overlapped several riparian functions, as would be expected as the various riparian function are all part of an integrated ecosystem process.

Other critical decisions for the presentation of literature review findings were related to highlight the inferences for forest management". SWC surmised and the TAC/BOF rep agreed that it was important to highlight what implication the research papers have for guiding specific management activities. Consequently, each individual literature review function contains a section on "inference for forest management" or otherwise contains a specific key question on this topic.

**Contract implementation:** The Board representative and the TAC met for initial project discussion in April of 2008. By June 2008, SWC had begun submitting draft task related to Primer reviews and identification of additional literature. The TAC and contractor worked to ensure the additional literature met the "literature screening criteria" established in the RFP to ensure all literature was credibly science based and relevant to the purpose of the review.

During July to September 2008, SWC submitted its initial draft literature reviews for each function. After much deliberation, the TAC developed a "ground rule" that established a process for reviewing SWC literature review products and communicating comments and potential edits for inclusion to the documents. The ground rule involved having each TAC member develop "Priority" comments and more detail comments that supported the priority comments or were suggestions that would improve information to the Board. The individual comments were assembled into a consolidated TAC response for SWC by the TAC subcommittee chairs that were assigned to develop the five Primers. Consolidated comments were then discussed among the entire TAC, consensus was reach as to the detail, tone, and priority of the comments, and BOF contract representative forwarded comments to SWC as the official comment of the TAC.

Official comments to SWC were offered as suggestions. SWC was directed to include or consider the comments at its discretion. In other words, the incorporation of the TAC comments was not required contractually. Thus the TAC determined that it was providing comments to improve the validity and clarity of the SWC documents, but that the SWC documents were ultimately the contractor's review and interpretation of the literature and was solely their conclusions drawn from the literature.

**Presentation of Literature Review findings:** The findings from the literature review will be presented by SWC to the entire Board as part of the contract requirement. The contractor will discuss his methodologies, some of the major findings for each riparian function, and discuss implications for forest management across all the functions. The presentation is scheduled for October 8, 2008.

**Technical Expert Forum**: The Board determined the need for a public meeting to have outside experts and the public discuss the results of the scientific literature review. This meeting is termed the "Technical Expert Forum" (TEF). The TEF will provide the opportunity for invited experts to provide their perspectives on the literature review and its findings. It will also provide an opportunity for the public to voice their prospective and ask questions of the SWC. The primary goal of the TEF will be to have outside scientists and the public identify strengths and weaknesses of the existing science and areas of agreement/disagreements with the literature review findings. The TEF will be held on October 23, 2008. Attending science experts include the following:

Dr. Lee Benda, Research Scientist, Earth Systems Institute, Mt. Shasta, California. Dr. Benda's focus is watershed morphology and sedimentology and studying the dynamic interactions between terrestrial and riverine landscapes. Dr. Benda has been a leader in the development of interdisciplinary analytical tools and watershed analysis methods that can be used to investigate the naturally dynamic behavior of watersheds and human's interaction within it.

Dr. Robert Beschta, Licensed Professional Hydrologist and Professor Emeritus, Oregon State University, Corvallis, Oregon. Dr. Beschta's has research interests in hydrologic effects of forest and rangeland uses, water quality stream temperatures, riparian area management and channel morphology, and restoration of riparian ecosystems

Dr. George Ice, National Council on Air and Stream Improvement Inc, Corvallis Oregon. The National Council for Air and Stream Improvement is an independent, non-profit research institute that focuses on environmental topics of interest to the forest products industry. Dr Ice is a principal scientist and program manager for NCASI. He is currently involved in forest riparian research in Minnesota, Texas, Oregon, and Idaho.

Dr. Thomas Lisle, Research Hydrologist, US Forest Service Pacific Southwest Research Station, Redwood Sciences Laboratory, Arcata, California Dr. Lisle is the team leader for project and programs on cumulative effects of forest management on hillslope processes, fisheries resources and downstream environments.

Dr. Lee MacDonald, Professor, Department of Forest, Rangeland and Watershed Stewardship, Warner College of Natural Resources, Colorado State University, Ft. Collins, Colorado. Dr. MacDonald's research focuses on the effects of forest management, fire, and roads on runoff, erosion, sediment yields, and stream channel characteristics . He is widely published and has achieved national and international recognition for his work throughout the U.S., Europe, Asia, and the Pacific. He has strong ties to California achieving his B.S. at Stanford, Ph.D. at U.C. Berkeley, and has been working on erosion and sediment delivery issues in the Sierra Nevada.

Dr. Mary Ann Madej, Research Geologist, US Geological Survey, Western Ecological Research Center, Redwood Field Station, Arcata, California. Dr. Madej is currently station leader conducting studies on geomorphic effects of floods, redwood regeneration in disturbed riparian zones, slope stability analysis, stream temperature monitoring, the effectiveness of road restoration techniques, as well as continuing work on sediment transport and channel monitoring. Dr. Madej is also in Adjunct Professor at Humboldt State University.

Dr. Gordie Reeves, Research Fish Biologist, Aquatic and Land Interaction Program, USDA Forest Service, Forestry Sciences Laboratory, PNW Research Station, Corvallis, Oregon. Dr. Reeves's research focuses on the impact of land management practices in juvenile anadromous salmonid and trout freshwater habitats, dynamics of aquatic ecosystems and the role of disturbances, and development of monitoring plan. He has participated in several efforts that evaluated options for managing federal lands in the Pacific Northwest and Alaska and was co-leader of the aquatic group of FEMAT. Dr. Reeves is also a courtesy professor at Oregon State University and Humboldt State University.

# IV. APPENDICES 1-7

1. T/I Review Process

2. Technical Advisory Committee Charter

3. Primers

   3A: Biotic and Nutrient Riparian Exchange Function

   3B: Wood Riparian Exchange Function

   3C: Heat Riparian Exchange Function

   3D: Sediment Riparian Exchange Function

   3E: Water Riparian Exchange Function

4. Key Questions

5 .List of Literature Reviewed

6.. Literature review screening criteria

7. Awarded SWC Request for proposal

# Appendix 1.  T/I Review Process

## Process for Threaten or Impaired Watershed Regulations Review[1]

# Staff Proposal April 21, 2008
# For Consideration at the May 6, 2008
# Forest Practice Committee Meeting

**Executive Summary:** California Forest Practice Rules related to protection of watersheds with anadromous salmonid species, termed the "Threatened or Impaired Watershed" rules (T/I rules), are under review by the State Board of Forestry and Fire Protection. The T/I rules are being reviewed for determining their adequacy in protecting the species, meeting the Forest Practice Act, and to establish permanent rules as the current rules expire on January 1, 2010.

The Board's Forest Practice Committee will conduct the review and has drafted a rule review process. The review process involves evaluating groups of similar rules against specific criteria, including current science literature. Each of the five rule groups would have at least three public meetings, one per month:

**Meeting sequence**

| Month #1 | Month #2 | Month #3 |
|---|---|---|
| Meeting #1 for rule group<br>Initial FPC regular Meeting | Meeting #2 for rule group<br>Stakeholder Meeting | Meeting #3 for rule group<br>FPC regular Meeting |

Review of current scientific literature is important part of the rule validation process. To facilitate an expedited review of science literature, submission by stakeholders of science literature related the non-riparian sections of the T/I rules should be delivered to the Board by May 2, 2008.

The FPC intends to complete the review by January 2009. Following the review the Board will begin any regulatory adoption procedures. Final adoption of any regulatory amendments would be completed by October 2009.

**Background:** In 2000, the California Forest Practice Rules were amended by the State Board of Forestry and Fire Protection (Board) in 11 rule sections for protection of watersheds with anadromous salmonid species. They were termed the "Threatened or Impaired Watershed" rules (T/I rules) and included rules for projects in watersheds listed as impaired under the 303(d) listing process. These rule changes were done in part as a response to National Marine Fishery Services deliberations on listing steelhead species. They apply to commercial forest harvesting

[1] Threaten or Impaired Watershed Regulations is board designated term for a suite of regulations within the California Forest Practice Rules that address requirements for protection of anadromous salmonid species during timber harvesting operations. See **Appendix 1** for the list of relevant regulations.

operations on private land and State Forest in any watershed where listed anadromous salmonids are found.

Since their adoption in 2000, these regulations have been modified and extended through Board action four times and are currently set to expire on December 31, 2008. Board rulemaking action extending the rules for an additional year was noticed on April 11, 2008.  Minor amendments were made to these rules in 2006 regarding plan review requirements.

Substantive provisions of the T/I regulations were adopted by the Board in 2007 for facilitating incidental take of coho salmon through DF&G §2112 regulation in a separate regulatory action. The rules adopted in 2007 apply only to coho salmon watersheds, which are subset of the T/I rules geographic area, and they do not have an expiration, or “sunset” date.

The T/I rules have not been comprehensively reviewed since their inception.  Such a review is statutorily required under Public Resource Code 4553.  The Board intends to review the existing all anadromy T/I rules for purposes of determining their adequacy in protecting the species and meeting other goals under Article 1 of the Forest Practice Act.   To facilitate at this review the Board to date has

1. appointed a Technical Advisory Committee to oversee a contracted review of current scientific literature on forest management effects on the riparian zone of anadromous salmonid fisheries.

2. directed staff to design an additional review process to facilitate review of the T/I rules beyond direct effects in the riparian zone.

3. appointed other groups including the Monitoring Study Group  and the Road Rules Committee to in part  provide information on forest management effects on  anadromous salmonid fisheries.

4. received testimony at Board meetings from state and federal agencies regarding the adequacy of the forest management regulations, specifically the Threatened or Impaired watershed regulations.

5. adopted “coho specific” regulations for take under CESA in 2007 in cooperation with Department of Fish and Game.

**Project Goals:**

- Conduct a review of the existing all anadromy T/I rules for purposes of determining their adequacy in protecting the species and meeting other goals under Article 1. of the Forest Practice Act.

- Conduct and complete review consistent with this review process.

- Following completion of review, develop regulatory amendments as needed.

- Completed rule amendments for regulatory noticing action on March 2009.

- Finalize adoption of modified regulations by Board in September 2009.

- Rules would become effective on January 2010.

- Develop regulations, when consistent with the Board's authorities, that support other regulatory agency needs (Regional Water Boards, DFG, NMFS)

- Rules adopted shall be permanent with no expiration date.

**General information:**

- A review process, described below, is established to ensure a uniform and complete review of the T/I rules. The Board's Forest Practice Committee will conduct a review consistent with this process.

- Routine public stakeholder and agency workshops would be held to review each rule section. Stakeholder comments will be accepted at any time during the rule review process or the official regulatory noticing period.

- Public stakeholder meetings will be held to review each T/ rule or rule group. The meetings will be formally noticed in accordance with the open meeting act requirements. Notice will include e-mailing or hardcopy mailing to a Board prepared stakeholder list and posting on the Board web site.

- Forest Practice Committee members, and other Board members, will attend stakeholder meetings and provide direction and to ensure proper decorum.

- The Forest Practice Committee wishes to obtain consensus opinions and recommendations from stakeholders when possible. Non-consensus opinions shall be noted in minutes.

- Forest Practice Committee will consider whether to apply any recommendations coming from the T/I rules to the recently adopted "coho" regulations.

- Forest Practice Committee will review progress of rule review at each regularly scheduled meeting.
- Responsible agencies will be contacted inviting their participation and comments prior to review of any T/I rule.
- All staff information background articles and meeting minutes shall be posted on the board web in a highly visible link on the front page of the web site.
- T/I current organizational format will be retained when possible and preferred, with consideration from road rule committee suggestions.

**Review process: See Flow Chart in Appendix 2**

**1. Rule groups:** T/I rules as are currently displayed in the Forest Practice Rules will be grouped according to similar topics (**see Appendix 3**).

**2. Time frame:** FPC will adopt a time frame/schedule to review groups of rules. (See **Appendix 4 Rule Review Time Frame**). Discussion and review of any T/I rule within a group may be extended beyond the time frames established for its review, as directed by the Forest Practice Committee. Rules will be reviewed sequentially or concurrently if necessary or logical.

**3. Meetings:** Each rule section or group of rule sections will have at least three review meetings: two Forest Practice Committee meetings and one stakeholder meeting. Each meeting will have one month between meetings.

**Meeting sequence**

| Month #1<br>Meeting #1 for rule group<br>Initial FPC regular Meeting | Month #2<br>Meeting #2 for rule group<br>Stakeholder Meeting | Month #3<br>Meeting #3 for rule group<br>FPC regular Meeting |
|---|---|---|

The number and content of meetings for each rule group at a minimum includes:

**Meeting #1 (regular FPC Meeting):** An initial introductory meeting at the Forest Practice Committee regularly scheduled monthly meeting. Groups of rules will be presented at the initial introductory Forest Practice Committee meeting. At a minimum, the meeting will include

a. the text of the Forest Practice Rules being reviewed;
b**.** public comments and revision suggestions received to the Board as of date of FPC meeting;
c. supporting technical papers and science reports presented to Board staff and/or assembled by the Board staff;

d. assignment of technical assistance teams, including any science review team such as the TAC;

e. direction from FPC on relevant key questions for science review and identification of "rule review criteria"; and

f . new public comment.

**Meeting #2 (Stakeholder Meeting):** A stakeholder meeting conducted before the next regularly monthly Forest Practice Committee meeting. This meeting will be held on the Monday prior to the regularly scheduled Tuesday Forest Practice Committee meeting. Forest Practice Committee members will attend to the extent possible stakeholder meetings. Stakeholder meeting will include at a minimum:

a. presentations of a report from technical review teams;

b. evaluation of "rule review criteria" stated in this charter applicable to the rule section; and

d. public input.

**Meeting # 3 (regular FPC meeting):** A concluding meeting at the next regularly scheduled Forest Practice Committee meeting following the first meetings described above. The final meeting would include:

a. staff update to the Forest Practice Committee on previous meetings;
b. completion of any items held over from previous two meetings;
c. draft rule proposals;
d. public input; and
e. Forest Practice Committee decisions or recommendations.

Stakeholders meetings will be formally noticed to the BOF contact list established for the project. Individual invitations will be offered to responsible agencies including the Central Valley Regional Water Quality Control Board, National Marine Fisheries Service, Department of Fish and Game, Central Coast Regional Water Quality Control Board, North Coast Region Quality Water Control Board, and State Water Quality Control Board.

4. **Technical review and science literature submissions:** Science, policy, legal, regulatory or other types review will be conducted as part of the overall T/I. Review requests will be identified and assigned by the FPC to the Technical Advisory Committee (TAC) or other group (i.e. Monitoring Study Group, road rules committee, interagency mitigation and monitoring program, legal counsel) at each initial FPC meeting. See http://www.fire.ca.gov/CDFBOFDB/pdfs/TI_ReviewProcess_042108.pdf

The TAC will be reviewing additional science literature on T/I rules that are not related to riparian buffer function (literature on riparian buffer function is already being reviewed as part of the contracted literature review contract.). FPC will be specific in terms of the nature of the topics requested for non-riparian science review and will provide key questions for which science review is requested.

**To facilitate an expedited review of technical science literature, submission by stakeholders of science documents should be delivered to the Board by May 2, 2008.**

Literature should be submitted to the following address:

Board of Forestry and Fire Protection
Attn: Christopher Zimny
Regulations Coordinator
P.O. Box 944246
Sacramento, CA 94244-2460

or hand delivered to:

Board of Forestry and Fire Protection
Room 1506-14
1416 9th Street
Sacramento, CA

or sent via facsimile to:
(916) 653-0989

or sent via e-mail a to:
board.public.comments@fire.ca.gov

Evaluation of technical information provided by any technical assistance teams will be conducted and presented to FPC prior to any decision/recommendations. Science review teams will focus on assessing certainty of existing science and report back on both certainty of findings and those with less certain information. Acceptable science literature to be included for this T/I review will be screened by TAC using screening criteria created for the contracted literature review.

**5. Rule review criteria:** Each rule or rule group will be evaluated in public by staff and with Forest Practice Committee and stakeholders input. Each rule section or group of rules will be evaluated using the complete set of review criteria (see below and http://www.fire.ca.gov/CDFBOFDB/pdfs/TI_ReviewProcess_042108.pdf). Existing rules will also be evaluated in context of records established for their initial adoption in 2000 (i.e. Initial Statement of Reasons from board rulemaking titled "Protection for Threatened and Impaired Watersheds, 2000, Office of Administrative Law Regulatory Action # 00-0517- 01S**.** The criteria used for the evaluation will include the following:

a. establishment of problem and necessity;
b. specific purpose of rule as currently written;
c. science literature supporting regulatory prescriptions;
d. identification of strengths and weakness of rule sections from a science basis;
e. FPR organization;
f. duplication with existing rules;
e. economic and fiscal impact;

f. legal perspective;
g. environmental impacts of the rule section; and
h. consistency with other regulatory agency needs.

**6. Rule amendment and alternatives:** Potential rule amendments will be developed by staff and presented to the Forest Practice Committee following the evaluation stated above. Alternatives will be identified. Stakeholder shall be provided opportunity to provide alternatives at this point in time to the Forest Practice Committee.

**7. FPC rule recommendations:** FPC will make recommendations on any proposed rule amendments to staff who will prepare those amendments. Amendments will be incorporated into a complete regulatory package that will be presented to the full board at the culmination of the T/I review process beginning in January 2009.

## Appendix 1

## Regulations related to "Watersheds with Threatened or Impaired Values" Title 14 of the California Code of Regulations

(All anadromy)

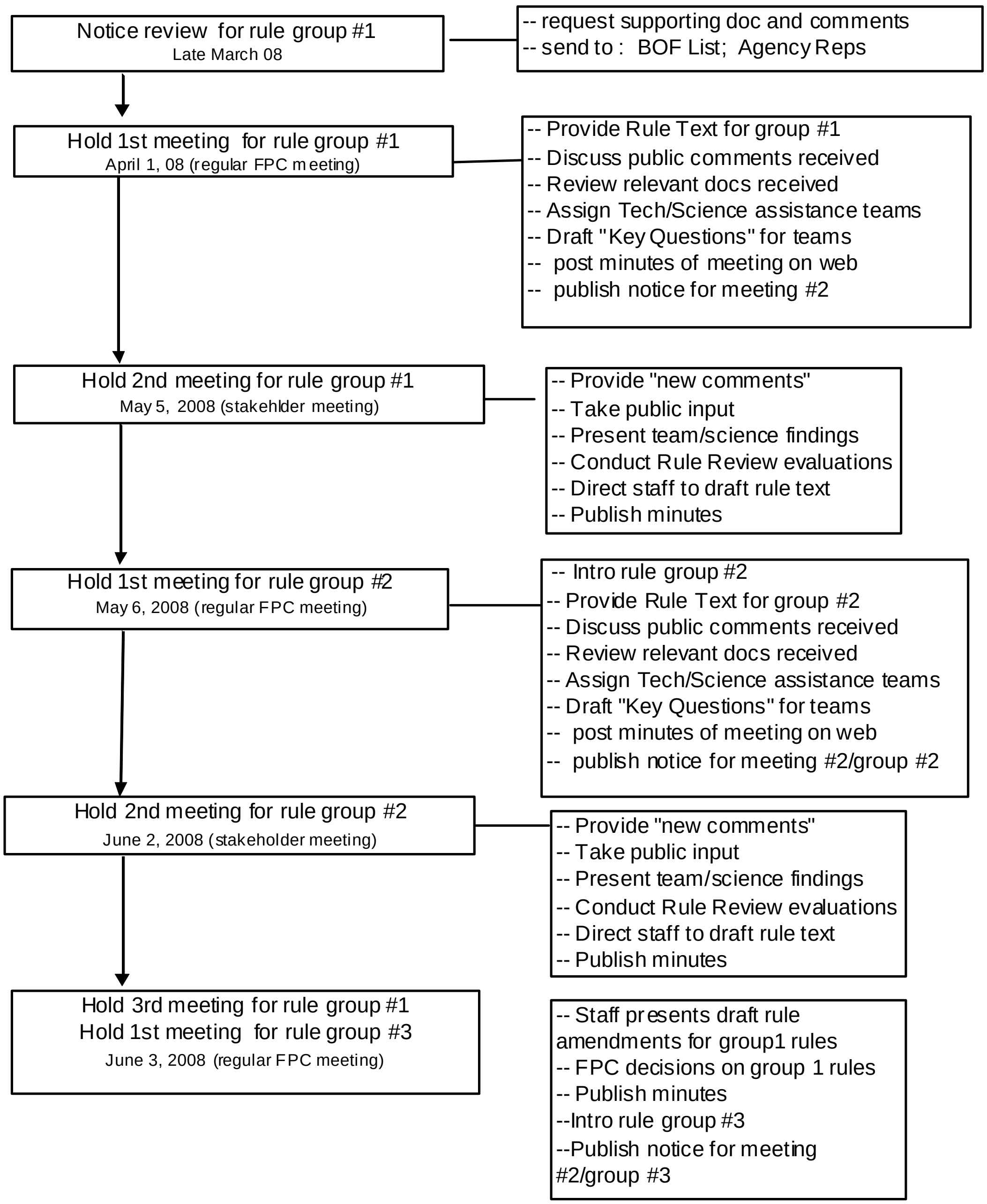
| | |
|---|---|
| § 895.1 | Definitions |
| § 898 | Feasibility Alternatives |
| § 898.2 | Special Conditions Requiring Disapproval of Plans |
| § 914.8 [934.8, 954.8] | Tractor Road Watercourse Crossing |
| § 916 [936, 956] | Intent of Watercourse and Lake Protection |
| § 916.2 [936.2, 956.2] | Protection of the beneficial Uses of Water and Riparian Functions |
| § 916.9 [936.9, 956.9] | Protection and Restoration in Watersheds with Threatened or Impaired Values |
| § 916.11 [936.11, 956.11] | Effectiveness and Implementation Monitoring |
| § 916.12 [936.12, 956.12] | Section 303(d) Listed Watersheds |
| § 923.3 [943.3, 963.3] | Watercourse Crossings |
| § 923.9 [943.9, 963.9] | Roads and Landings in Watersheds with Threatened or Impaired Values |

(Coho watersheds only)

| | |
|---|---|
| § 916.9.1[936.9.1] | Minimization and Mitigation Measures for Protection and Restoration in Watersheds with Coho Salmon |
| § 916.9.2 [ 936.9.2] | Additional Measures to Facilitate Incidental Take Authorization in Watersheds with Coho Salmon |
| § 916.11.1 [936.11.1] | Monitoring for Adaptive Management in Watersheds with Coho Salmon |
| § 923.9.1 [943.9.1] | Minimization and Mitigation Measures for Roads and Landings in Watersheds with Coho Salmon |
| § 923.9.2 [943.9.2] | Additional Measures to Facilitate Incidental Take Authorization in Watersheds with Coho Salmon |

# Appendix 2

## Rule review process flow chart




continue cycle through December 2008

# Appendix 3

**Major topics of the 2000 T/I rules and the subsequent amendments**

**Group #1**

**Goals/Intent**

**Intent language specificity for beneficial use protection:** (916, 916.2, 916.9(a), and 916.9(c)): goals relevant to entire watershed geographic areas (riparian zone and upland)

**Watershed Definitions**

**Definitions** (895.1): includes specific riparian zone characteristics, and operating surface conditions (for all areas).

**Group #2**

**Geographic Scope**

**new definitions** (895.1): includes T/I watershed definition.

**Plan Preparation**

- **plan content , consultation requirements, disapproval thresholds** (898.2)

**Group #3**

**Cumulative Impacts**

- **cumulative effects analyses for entire watershed** (898,916.9 (b))
- **Assessments in Section 303(d) Listed Watersheds**: Require further assessments and recommendations for watersheds to meeting TMDL goals. (916.12)

**Group #4**

**Operational Requirements**

**tractor crossings standards for riparian zones** (914.8)

**logging operations in riparian zones and other upland areas** (916.9)**:** goals and standards contained in this section represent most substantive operational change requirements of all t/I rule amendments.

**road and landings management practice** (923.3, 923.9**):** established construction standards to accommodate life stage all life stages, sediment deposited movement, road width, road drainage, cuts and fills, steep road segments, and other low risk design structures and vulnerable watershed areas. Regulations apply to both riparian areas and upland areas.

**Group #5**

**Monitoring**

**monitoring and adaptive management** (916.11,, 916.12): established postharvest monitoring for operations in a WLPZ and in upland areas for monitoring roading.

# Appendix 4

## Rule Review Time Frames

Rule Group #1 – April, May, June 2008
- Goals and intent – 916, 916.2
- Watershed definitions – 895.1

Rule Group #2 – May, June, July 2008
- Geographic scope – 895.1
- Plan preparation – 898.2

Rule Group #3 – June, July, August 2008
- Cumulative impacts – 898.1, 916.9b
- Assessments in Sec. 303(d) Listed Watersheds – 916.12

Rule Group #4 – July , August, Sept, October, November 2008
- Operational requirements – tractor crossings – 914.8
- Logging in riparian and other upland areas – 916.9
- Road and landing management – 923.3, 923.9

Rule Group #5 – October, November, December 2008
- Monitoring – 916.11

## Appendix #4
## Rule Review Time Frames

### April 2008

| Sun | Monday | Tuesday | Wed | Thur | Fri | Sat |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 1<br>Meeting #1 (FPC): **Goals/Intent and Defs.** | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |

### May 2008

| Sun | Monday | Tuesday | Wed | Thur | Fri | Sat |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4 | 5<br>Meeting #2(Stakeholder):**Goals/Intent and Defs.** | 6<br>Meeting #1 (FPC): **Geo Scope and Plan Prep** | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |

### June 2008

| Sun | Monday | Tuesday | Wed | Thur | Fri | Sat |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 2<br>Meeting #2 (Stakeholder):**Geo Scope and Plan Prep** | 3<br>Meeting #3(FPC) : **Goals/Intent and Defs.**<br>Meeting #1 **(FPC):Cumulative Impacts** | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |

### July 2008

| Sun | Monday | Tuesday | Wed | Thur | Fri | Sat |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 6 | 7<br>Meeting #2 (Stakeholder):**Cumulative Impacts** | 8<br>Meeting #3 (FPC):**Geo Scope and Plan Prep**<br>Meeting #1 (FPC): **Operational Reqs.** | **Sound Watershed Literature Review Presentation** | 10 | 11 | 12 |

### August 2008

| Sun | Monday | Tuesday | Wed | Thur | Fri | Sat |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3 | 4<br>Meeting #2 (Stakeholder): **Operational Reqs.** | 5<br>Meeting #3 (FPC): **Cumulative Impacts** | 6 **Technical Expert Forum** | 7 | 8 | 9 |

### September 2008

| Sun | Monday | Tuesday | Wed | Thur | Fri | Sat |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 7 | 8<br>Meeting #3 (Stakeholder): **Operational Reqs.** | 9<br>Meeting #4 (FPC): **Operational Reqs.** | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 |

### October 2008

| Sun | Monday | Tuesday | Wed | Thur | Fri | Sat |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 5 | 6<br>Meeting #5 (Stakeholder): **Operational Reqs.** | 7<br>Meeting #6 (FPC): **Operational Reqs.**<br>Meeting #1 (FPC): **Monitoring** | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |

### November 2008

| Sun | Monday | Tuesday | Wed | Thur | Fri | Sat |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | 3<br>Meeting #2 (Stakeholder): **Monitoring** | 4<br>Meeting #7 (FPC): **Operational Reqs.** | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 |

### December 2008

| Sun | Monday | Tuesday | Wed | Thur | Fri | Sat |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 2<br>Meeting #3 (FPC): **Monitoring** | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |

### January 2009

| Sun | Monday | Tuesday | Wed | Thur | Fri | Sat |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4 | 5 | **6 Staff Presents Combined Recommendations to FPC** | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |

### February 2009

| Sun | Monday | Tuesday | Wed | Thur | Fri | Sat |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 2 | **3 Committee Delberations/ Direction to Staff** | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |

4

### March 2009

| Sun | Monday | Tuesday | Wed | Thur | Fri | Sat |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 2 | **3 Staff Presents edits** | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |

### April 2009

| Sun | Monday | Tuesday | Wed | Thur | Fri | Sat |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 5 | 6 | **4 FPC Action to Notice** | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |

# Appendix 2.  Technical Advisory Committee Charter

State Board of Forestry and Fire Protection (Board)

# Charter of Technical Advisory Committee (TAC) In Support of Threatened or Impaired Watershed Scientific Literature Review of studies pertinent to riparian buffers and functions

October 23, 2006

## Background of Scientific Literature Review and TAC

**Necessity:** The Board has statutory responsibility for a comprehensive set of Forest Practice Rules (PRC §§ 4551, 4551.5, et al) that govern planning and conduct of timber operations on private timberlands in the State. Interim Forest Practice Rules for protection of listed anadromous salmonids (termed the Threatened or Impaired, or T/I rules, under 14 CCR §§ 916.9, 936.9, and 956.9) will expire at the end of December, 2007. Concurrently, the California Department of Fish Game has been directed by the Fish and Game Commission in conjunction with the California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection, landowners and scientific experts, to monitor and review existing timber harvesting regulations for the protection of Coho salmon resulting from a recent listing of the species. These situations necessitate consideration by the Board for the renewal, amendment, or repeal of the T/I rules.

***The TAC will oversee a scientific literature review on forest management effects on anadromy and riparian zone functions and assist the Board in obtaining an effective summary of relevant scientific information.***

**Scientific Literature Review:** The Board is required to base the rules upon a study of factors that significantly effect the condition of timberlands (ref. PRC § 4552) and is required to consult with various groups including agencies and educational institutions as the rules are reviewed and revised (ref. PRC § 4553). In light of these requirements and of the scientific basis of the T/I rules, the Board has determined it will obtain and consider scientific information to support the decision-making process for its consideration of the T/I rules. To this end, the above requirements, the Board will facilitate a review of existing scientific literature, using scientific experts to evaluate the information. The literature review will focus on information related to anadromous salmonids and associated forest management activities. The Board will commission a qualified contractor to conduct the literature review and has created a draft “Scope of Work” that outlines the tasks and deliverables for the literature review.

**TAC**: The Board recognizes the literature review will provide highly technical information, with great variation in study types, geographic settings and findings. The literature review must be formatted, presented and evaluated appropriately to provide useful information for policy decisions, demonstrate transparency of process, and provide clarity to non-technical Board members and public stakeholders. To facilitate these needs, the Board will use a team of well renowned subject matter experts, termed a Technical Advisory Committee, to oversee the literature review and assist the Board in obtaining an effective summary of relevant scientific information. The following information is the Charter for the TAC and includes TAC Mission, TAC Values, TAC Composition, and TAC Goals and Tasks.

**TAC Mission**

Provide professional expertise and guidance to the Board to ensure the scientific literature review related to anadromous salmonids and forest management activities provides credible, comprehensive and relevant information for the Board's rulemaking and policy processes.

**TAC Values**

**1)** TAC objectively serves the Board and the public's interest, with recognition of the need for a balanced evaluation of relevant scientific literature.

**2)** TAC supports presentation of the full spectrum of literature findings.

**3)** The TAC is highly qualified group of scientists representing a wide variety of professional disciplines, who will work together in a collegial manner, seeking consensus on matters reported to the Board.

**TAC Composition, Duration, and Logistics**

**Composition:** The TAC is a "Blue Ribbon" team of professional, highly qualified scientists that will be appointed and serve at the direction of the Board. The TAC will be comprised of members with a variety of professional disciplines with expertise related to anadromy and forest management. Disciplines include fisheries biology, forestry, hydrology, geology, geomorphology, and watershed processes. It will be composed of approximately 12 members. Five member seats are allocated to government agency personnel from the Department of Forestry and Fire Protection, Department of Fish and Game, California Geological Survey, National Marine Fisheries Services, and State Water Resources Control Board. The remaining members are qualified professionals from industry/trade organizations, universities, non-governmental organizations, private consulting, or the general public.  A staff member of the Board will attend meetings for coordination purposes and as a resource to the TAC.

One of the TAC members has been designated as the Chair of the TAC.  The Chair will be responsible for facilitation of TAC activities and formal communications from the TAC to the Board.  The TAC Chair will chair and coordinate meetings, provide leadership, ensure progress of TAC toward timely completion of its tasks, and coordinate reports to the Board regarding TAC progress.

The TAC (or the TAC Chair) may, as it deems appropriate and subject to financial constraints,  obtain assistance from other qualified professionals for the purpose of providing unique expertise related to specific subject matter.

There will be no financial compensation for services provided to TAC members from the Board.   TAC members will be reimbursed for their expenses in attending meetings.

**Duration:** The TAC will be a temporary committee convened for the duration of both the literature review, and subsequent deliberations of the Board in formulating policy based on information provided by the review.  The duration of the TAC for this project is estimated to be one year, from September 2006, to September, 2007.

**Meeting Logistics:**  The TAC will meet periodically as needed to complete its tasks.  Meetings will be convened for the entire TAC.  The meetings of the TAC will be duly noticed meetings which will be open to the public pursuant to the Bagley-Keene State Open Meeting Act. The public will be invited to comment by the TAC Chair at specified times during a meeting.  The meetings will be conducted in person, with provision for telephonic attendance as may be necessary and appropriate. The TAC Chair may be responsible for determining meeting format, location, and duration. The TAC Chair may assign individual tasks to subcommittees between meetings.  In order to ensure progress and allow public access to the meetings, the TAC Chair will establish a schedule of formal TAC meetings at the first TAC meeting.   Meetings will be scheduled to accommodate attendance by all members so work of the TAC can be completed in a manner that is timely and reflects the input of the entire TAC.

**TAC Goals and Tasks**

**1)** Review and edit Scope of Work prior to the Board's commissioning of a literature review contractor. The TAC review should include the following:
   a. Identify key literature topics and other summarized literature reviews that should be included in the Scope of Work.
   b. Refine Key Questions.
   c. Identify any other administrative components needed to contribute to successful contact implementation.

**2)** Ensure contractor's literature review is progressing in the appropriate time frame.

**3)** Ensure the contactor's literature review is delivering useable products that meet the stated Scope of Work Project Goals.

**4)** Communicate progress and quality of accomplishments periodically to the Board (preferably at each monthly Forest Practice Committee meeting and at full board meetings as requested/needed).

**5)** Ensure that contractor performance of Task 4 (S*ummary and synthesis of literature review*) effectively addresses the Key Questions.

**6)** Review and consider for concurrence or modifications, the synthesis prepared by contactor pursuant to Task 4.3.

**7)** As may be appropriate, provide recommendations to the Board for necessary contractual actions to improve contract content or performance to best meet Board Project Goals.

**8)** Be available to present literature review findings to the Board during consideration of literature review findings and participate in subsequent policy discussions.

End

# Appendix 3A: Primer : Biotic and Nutrient Riparian Exchange Function

# Primer
# on
# Biotic & Nutrient
# Riparian Exchanges Related to Forest Management in the Western U.S.

Prepared by the
Technical Advisory Committee
of the
California Board of Forestry and Fire Protection

May 2007

Version 1.0

# Technical Advisory Committee Members

| | |
|---|---|
| Ms. Charlotte Ambrose | NOAA Fisheries |
| Dr. Marty Berbach | California Dept. of Fish and Game |
| Mr. Pete Cafferata | California Dept. of Forestry and Fire Protection |
| Dr. Ken Cummins | Humboldt State University, Institute of River Ecosystems |
| Dr. Brian Dietterick | Cal Poly State University, San Luis Obispo |
| Dr. Cajun James | Sierra Pacific Industries |
| Mr. Gaylon Lee | State Water Resources Control Board |
| Mr. Gary Nakamura (Chair) | University of California Cooperative Extension |
| Dr. Sari Sommarstrom | Sari Sommarstrom & Associates |
| Dr. Kate Sullivan | Pacific Lumber Company |
| Dr. Bill Trush | McBain & Trush, Inc. |
| Dr. Michael Wopat | California Geological Survey |

# Staff

| | |
|---|---|
| Mr. Christopher Zimny | California Dept. of Forestry and Fire Protection |

Prepared as background for the 2007 Scientific Literature Review of Forest Management Effects on Riparian Functions in Anadromous Salmonid Fishes for the California Board of Forestry and Fire Protection.

To be cited as:
*California Board of Forestry and Fire Protection Technical Advisory Committee (CBOF-TAC). 2007. Primer on Biotic and Nutrient Riparian Exchanges Related to Forest Management in the Western U.S., Version 1.0. Sacramento, CA.*

# PRIMER: BIOTIC AND NUTRIENT RIPARIAN EXCHANGE FUNCTION

The riparian vegetation area (zone) along forested streams serves critical biotic and nutrient transfer and exchange functions that directly and indirectly control the survival and growth of juvenile salmonids (e.g. Wilzbach et al. 2005, Jones et al. 2006). Therefore, the timing, magnitude, and qualitative aspects of these biotic and nutrient riparian influences are not only among the very best predictors of overall stream ecosystem health and the condition of the component salmonid populations (e.g. Naiman and Dechamps 1997, Gregory et al. 1991, Meyer et al. 2003, Moore and Richardson 2003), but they also constitute significant potential for management procedures to sustain and/or enhance these salmonid populations (e.g. Bilby and Bisson 1992).

The riparian biotic and nutrient transfers and exchanges are directly or indirectly important to the growth and survival of juvenile salmonids. These can be categorized into: 1) light and nutrients (including dissolved organics), and 2) inputs of particulate organic matter and terrestrial invertebrates (see Figure 1). The general characteristics of the biotic and nutrient exchanges and transfers differ in a predictable way along a west to east gradient. For example, temperature is moderated by coastal climate and has less seasonal effect on in-stream metabolic rates of the resident organisms than in eastern drainages where both daily and seasonal temperature excursions are significantly greater.

### Shading by Riparian Vegetation Cover Over, and Transfer of Nutrients into, Streams

Light and nutrients regulate in-stream plant growth, primarily algae. The periphyton assemblage on surfaces in running water constitute the food resource for a group of aquatic invertebrates termed scrapers, after their behavior of scraping loose their attached algal food resource. Light has been shown to be limiting for algal growth in some shaded forest streams even under conditions of very low nutrient concentrations (Gregory 1980, 1983). Limitation of algal growth whether by nitrogen or phosphorous is primarily a function of the parent geology in a watershed (Allan 1995). If light and/or nitrogen and/or phosphorous nutrients become available in significant excess over natural conditions, the algal community can move through a succession from a single cell and small colony community, largely of diatoms and green algae, to a filamentous colony dominated by blue-green (cyanobacteria) and green algae (Stockner and Shortreed 1978, Shortreed and Stockner 1983). The former provides a suitable food resource for scraper invertebrates, the latter does not (e.g. Dudley et al. 1986). Therefore, management actions that shift the periphyton to domination by filamentous forms has a severe negative impact on scrapers, some of which are important prey of juvenile salmonids. Increase of nutrients and light, especially if combined with the deposition of fine sediments, can favor the development of rooted vascular aquatic plants (Clarke 2002). These vascular hydrophytes, including aquatic mosses, if they are present, function primarily as habitat for many invertebrates (e.g. Fisher and Carpenter 1976). That is, they are sites for attachment and concealment, and serve as a food resource for only a very few, and these invertebrates are not commonly consumed by juvenile salmonids (Merritt and Cummins 1996). However, many of the invertebrate taxa that utilize vascular hydrophytes as a habitat are consumed by fish (Svendsen et al. 2004). When filamentous algae and vascular hydrophytes die, they enter the detrital cycle and are consumed by gathering collector invertebrates, many of which are important food organism for juvenile salmonids (Svendsen et al. 2004). A simple and effective bioassay for nitrate and/or phosphate nutrient limitation of algal growth in streams has been developed and well tested (Fairchild and Lowe 1984). Diffusing substrates are used which can be evaluated visually (or by chlorophyll analysis) to determine if a given riparian condition is fostering light and/or nutrient limitation, and, if the latter, which nutrient is most limiting.

Along with nitrogen and phosphorous, dissolved organic matter (DOM) can stimulate the growth of microorganisms that are responsible for the direct decomposition of particulate organic matter (POM) (Ward and Aumen 1986). These microbes also serve as the most important component of the coarse particulate organic matter (CPOM) food source of shredder macroinvertebrates and some of these are prey for juvenile salmonids (Cummins et al. 1989, Svendsen et al. 2004).

### Transfer of Riparian Litter and Terrestrial Invertebrates into Streams

Litter derived from riparian vegetation is the dominant base of food chains in forested streams of orders 0 through 3. (Cummins et al.198, Cummins 2002). Up to 90% of the energy flow in such streams is attributable to this litter (Fisher and Likens 1973, Richardson et al. 2006). The processing times (normalized for temperature by expressing it as degree-days) of coarse litter, primarily leaves and needles, is known for a wide range of riparian plant species (Petersen and Cummins 1974, Webster and Benfield 1986, Cummins et al. 1989, Richardson et al. 2004). Riparian litter can be classified according to its processing rate, that is, the turnover time required to convert the material to some other form once it is in the stream. Most hard woods (e.g. alders, vine and big-leaf maples and some shrubs such as salmon berry and elder berry) have short processing times and are referred to as fast (turnover) litter (Petersen and Cummins 1974). By contrast, most conifers (e.g. redwood, Douglas fir) and broad-leaf evergreens (e.g. rhododendron and laurel), oak hardwoods, and willows have long processing times and are termed slow (turnover) litter (Petersen and Cummins 1974). Processing is defined as the sum of leaching of DOM, decomposition by microbes, feeding by shredder invertebrates, and mechanical fragmentation (Cummins et al. 1989). The majority of leaching of soluble organics from wetted litter is rapid with the litter losing 20-40% of it's dry mass in 24 to 72 hours (Petersen and Cummins 1974). This portion of litter processing is non-biological and and fairly independent of temperatures from 5 to 20 ºC (Petersen and Cummins 1974, Dahm 1981). After the initial loss rapid loss of weight due to leaching, small amounts of DOM continue to leach slowly from litter and large woody debris (LWD; Cummins et al. 1983). The riparian terrestrial soil and litter also continuously leach small to moderate amounts of DOM into streams (Allan 1995).

In order for riparian litter to be processed by microbes and shredders it must be retained in place in a given reach for a sufficient period for microbial conditioning and shredder feeding to take place. Small woodland streams have been shown to be quite retentive, providing that sufficient wood debris and other obstructions are present. Once it is wetted, the major portion of the riparian litter introduced into a small stream is retained within the range of 100 meters (Cummins et al. 1989). The percent cover by species of riparian vegetation has been shown to be a good predictor of the percent composition of the litter entrained in a reach of stream. Linked to this, the hatching and major feeding by resident shredder invertebrates is keyed to the timing of the drop and entrainment of the different riparian species (Grubbs and Cummins 1986; Cummins et al. 1989, Richardson 2001)

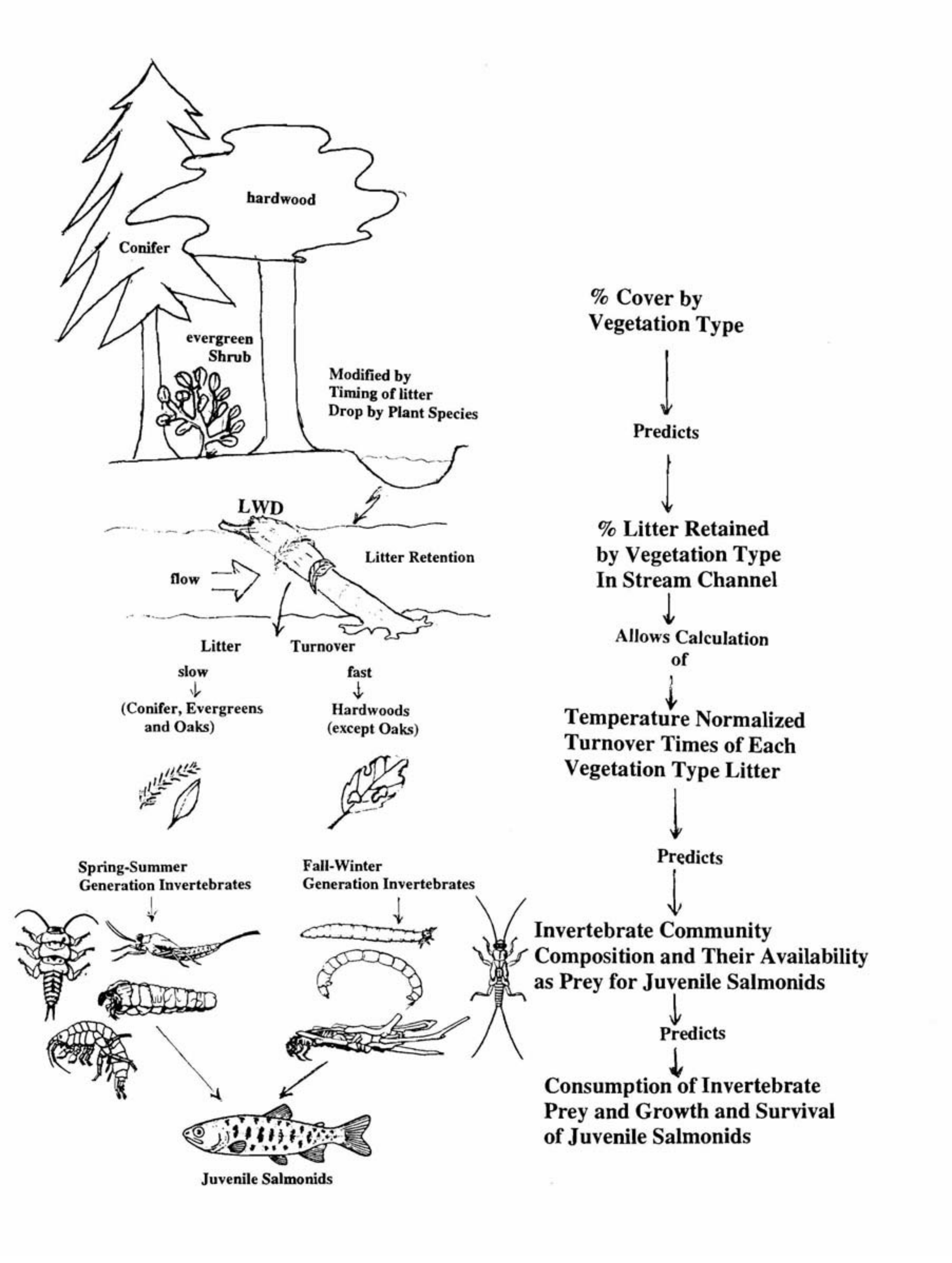
The end result of litter processing is microbial and invertebrate biomass and fine particulate organic matter (FPOM, <1mm>0.5 µm particle size) (Cuffney et al. 1990). FPOM transported in suspension is the major food of filtering collector invertebrates and, when it settles out on or into the sediments it is the food of gathering collector invertebrates (Merritt and Cummins 1996). These two invertebrate groups contain the most important prey items for juvenile salmonids (Wilzbach et al. 2006).

The aquatic invertebrates that depend upon periphyton, plant litter, and FPOM as their food resources, and constitute important prey for juvenile salmonids in forested streams are tightly coupled to the riparian area, because of the restriction of algal populations by shading and organic matter transfers. The aquatic insects among these can be characterized as having deterministic life cycles that are adapted to stochastic environmental conditions such as flow and temperature regimes and the timing of riparian litter inputs. The general pattern is one in which the most vulnerable life stages are matched to the seasonal periods during which environmental conditions have the highest probability of being favorable (e.g. Fisher et al. 1982). Stream flows suitable to allow eggs and newly hatched nymphs and larvae to maintain their location and the availability of food for feeding nymphs and larva are seasonally timed (Grubbs and Cummins 1996, Richardson 2001). For example, invertebrate shredders lay their eggs in late summer and early fall when stream are at base flow. This timing leads to hatching of larvae and nymphs at the time of abscission of deciduous riparian hardwoods that are in the fast processing category and the food supply of the autumn-winter shredders (Grubbs and Cummins 1996, Cummins et al. 1989). Spring –summer shredder populations rely on litter with longer processing times, such as conifer needles, as their food resource (Cummins, et al.1989, Robinson et al. 2000).

Terrestrial invertebrates also constitute transfers from the riparian area into the stream ecosystem. Included are canopy insects and their frass, annelids, spiders, and ants from the soil and terrestrial litter mat (Nakano and Murakami 2001, Allan et al. 2003). Among the terrestrial invertebrate inputs from the riparian area are the adult (and in some cases pupal) stages of aquatic insects. All of these transfers of terrestrial invertebrates to the stream can serve as important food sources for juvenile salmonids, at least seasonally. Aquatic invertebrates are more abundant in the winter and terrestrial forms are more abundant in the summer in juvenile salmonid diets. (Shigeru and Murakami 2001, Allan et al. 2003).

The activities of the microbes and invertebrate shredders on leaf litter, the resulting FPOM that is generated, and the ensuing effect on invertebrate collectors in the smallest streams is transmitted down stream (e.g. Vannote et al. 1980, Webster et al. 1999, Cummins and Wilzbach 2005, Meyer et al. 2007). Woody debris is also a source of FPOM, although it is released more slowly (Ward and Aumen 1986). These cumulative effects from small headwater streams to larger tributaries constitute an important delivery system to juvenile salmonid populations down stream (e.g. Wipfli and Gregovich 2002, Wipfli and Musselwhite 2004) and constitute a basis for their protection (Cummins and Wilzbach 2005).

Figure 1: Riparian biotic and nutrient transfers and exchanges process  relative to growth and survival of juvenile salmonids



## BIOTIC/NUTRIENT PRIMER REFERENCES

Allan, J. D. 1995. Nutrient dynamic. Pp 283-303 in: Allan, J. D. Stream ecology, structure and function of running waters. Chapman & Hall, New York, NY 388p.

Allan, J. D., M. S. Wipfli, J. P. Caouette, A. Prussian, and J.. Rodgers. 2003. Influence of streamside vegetation on inputs of terrestrial invertebrates to salmonid food webs. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 60: 309-320.

Bilby, R. E. and P. A. Bisson. 1992. Allochthonous versus autochthonous organic matter contributions to the trophic support of fish populations in clear-cut and old-growth forested streams. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 49: 540-551.

Clarke, S. J. 2002. Vegetaton growth in rivers: influences upon sediment and nutrient dynamics. Prog Phys. Geogr. 26: 159-172.

Cuffney, T. F., J. B. Wallace, and G. J. Lugthart. 1990. Experimantal evidence quatifying the role of benthic invertebrates in organic matter dynamics of headwater streams. Frehwat. Biol. 23: 281-299.

Cummins, K. W. 2002. Riparian-stream linkage paradigm. Verh. Internat. Verein. Limnol. 28: 49-58.

Cummins, K. W. and M. A. Wilzbach. 2005. The inadequacy of the fish-bearing criterion for stream management. Aquatic. Sciences, Research Across Boundaries. 67: 486-491.

Cummins, K. W., M. A. Wilzbach, D. M. Gates, J. B. Perry, and W. B. Talliaferro. 1989. Shredders and riparian vegetation. BioScience 39: 24-34.

Dahm, C. N. 1981. Pathways and mechanisms for removal of dissolved organic carbon from leaf leachate in streams. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 38: 68-76.

Dudley, T. L., S. D. Cooper, and N. Hemphill. 1986. Effects of macroalgae on a stream invertebrate community. J. N. Am. Benthol. Soc. 5: 93-106.

Fairchild, G. W. and R. L. Lowe. 1984. Artificial substrates which release nutrients: effects on periphyton and invertebrate succession. Hydrobiologia 114: 29-37.

Fisher, S. G. and G. E. Likens. 1973. Energy flow in Bear Brook, New Hampshire: an integrative approach to stream ecosystem metabolism. Ecol. Monogr. 43: 421-439.

Fisher, S. G. and S. R. Carpenter. 1976. Ecosystem and macrophyte primary production of the Fort River, Massachusetts. Hydrobiologia 47: 175-187.

Gregory, S. V. 1980. Effects of light, nutrients, and grazing on periphyton communities in streams. Ph.D. dissertation, Oregon State University, Corvallis, OR.

Gregory, S. V. 1983. Plant herbivore interactions in stream systems. Pp 157-189 *in*: Barnes, J. R. and G. W. Minshall. (eds.). Stream ecology: applications and testing of general ecological theory. Plenum Press, New York, NY.

Gregory, S. V., F. J. Swanson, W. A. Mckee, and K. W. Cummins. 1991. An ecosystem perspective of riparian zones: focus on links between land and water. BioScience 41: 540-551.

Grubbs, S. A. and K. W. Cummins. 1996. Linkages between riparian forest composition and shredder voltinism. Arch. Hydrobiol. 137: 39-58.

Jones, K. L., G. C. Poole, J. L. Meyer, W. Bimback, and E. A. Kramer. 2006. Quantifying expected ecological response to natural resource legislation: a case study of riparian buffers, aquatic habitat, and trout populations. Ecology and Society 11: article 15 (http://www.ecolgyand society.org/vol11/iss2/art15/)

Merritt, R. W. and K. W. Cummins. (eds.). 1996. An introduction to the aquatic insects of North America. Kendall/Hunt, Dubuque, IA 862p.

Meyer, J.L., L.A. Kaplan, D. Newbold, D.L. Strayer, C.J. Woltemade, J.B. Zedler, R. Beilfuss, Q. Carpenter, R. Semlitch, M.C. Watlin, and P.H. Zedler. 2003. Where Rivers Are Born: The Scientific Imperative for Defending Small Streams and Wetlands.
www.americanrivers.org/site/DocServer/WhereRiversAreBorn1.pdf
It can also be found at the Sierra Club website.

Meyer, J. L., D. L. Strayer, J. B. Wallace, S. L. Eggert, G. S. Helfman, and N. E. Leonard. 2007. The contribution of headwater streams to biodiversity of river networks. J. Amer. Wat. Res. Assoc. (*Feb., in press*).

Moore, D. and J. S. Richardson. 2003. Progress towards understanding the structure, function, and ecological significance of small stream channels and their riparian zones. Can. J. For. Res. 33: 1349-1351.

Naiman, R. J. and H. Dechamps. 1997. The ecology of interfaces: riparian zones. Ann. Rev. Ecol. Syst. 28: 621-658.

Nakano, S. and M. Murakami. 2001. Reciprocal subsidies: dynamic interdependence between terrestrial and aquatic food webs (forest-stream ecotone/allochthonous prey flux). Proc. Nat Acad. Sci. 98: 166-170.

Petersen, R. C and K. W. Cummins. 1974. Leaf processing in a woodland stream. Freshwat. Biol. 4: 343-368.

Richardson, J. S. 2001. Life cycle phenology of common detritivores from a temperate rainforest stream. Hydrobiologia 455: 87-95.

Richardson, J. S., C. R. Shaughnessy, and P. G. Harrison. 2004. Litter breakdown and invertebrate association with three types of leaves in a temperate rainforest stream. Archiv. Hydrobiol. 159: 309-325.

Richardson, J. S., R. E. Bilby, and C. A. Bondar. 2006. Organic matter dynamics in small streams of the Pacific northwest. J. Amer. Wat. Res. Assoc. 41: 921-934.

Robinson, C. T., M. O. Gessner, K. A. Callies, C. Jolidon, and J. V. Ward. 2000. Larch needle breakdown in contrasting streams of an alpine glacial floodplain. J. N. Amer. Benthol. Soc. 19: 250-262.

Shortreed, K. R. S. and J. G. Stockner. 1983. Periphyton biomass and species composition in a coastal rainforest stream in British Columbia: effects of environmental changes caused by logging. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 40: 1887-1895.

Stockner, J. G. and K. R. S. Shortreed. 1976. Autotrophic production in Carnation Creek, a costal stream on Vancouver Island, British Columbia. J. fish. Res. BD. Can. 35: 28-34.

Svendsen, C. R., T. Quinn, and D. Kolbe. 2004. Review of macroinvertebrate drift in lotic ecosystems. Report, Washington Dept. Fish Wildlife, 600 Capital Way, Olympia, WA 98501.

Vannote, R. L., G. W. Minshall, K.W. Cummns, J. R. Sedell, and C. E. Cushing. 1980. The river continuum concept. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 37: 130-137.

Ward, G. M. and N. G. Aumen. 1986. Woody debris as a source of fine particulate organic matter in coniferous forest stream ecosystems. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 43: 1635-1642.

Webster, J. R. and E. F. Benfield. 1986. Vascular plant break-down in freshwater ecosystems. Ann. Rev. Ecol. Syst. 17: 567-594.

Webster, J. R., E. F. Benfield, T. P. Ehrman, M. A. Schaeffer, J L. Tank, J. J. Hutchinson, and D. J. D'Angelo. 1999. What happens to allochthonous material that falls into streams? A synthesis of new and published information from Coweeta. Freshwat. Biol. 41: 687-705.

Wilzbach, M.A., B.C. Harvey, J.L. White, and R.J. Nakamoto. 2005. Effects of riparian canopy opening and salmon carcass addition on the abundance and growth of resident salmonids. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 62: 58-67.

Wipfli, M. S. and D. P. Gregovich. 2002. Export of invertebrates and detritus from fishless headwater streams in southeastern Alaska: implications for downstream salmonid production. Freshwat. Biol. 47: 957-969.

Wipfli, M. S. and J. Musselwhite. 2004. Density of Red alder (Alnus rubra) in headwaters influences invertebrate and detritus subsidies to downstream fish habitats in Alaska. Hydrobiologia 520: 153-163.

KC 1/23/07

# Appendix 3B: Primer : Wood Riparian Exchange Function

# Primer on Wood Riparian Exchanges Related to Forest Management in the Western U.S.

Prepared by the
Technical Advisory Committee
of the
California Board of Forestry and Fire Protection

May 2007

Version 1.0

# Technical Advisory Committee Members


| | |
|---|---|
| Ms. Charlotte Ambrose | NOAA Fisheries |
| Dr. Marty Berbach | California Dept. of Fish and Game |
| Mr. Pete Cafferata | California Dept. of Forestry and Fire Protection |
| Dr. Ken Cummins | Humboldt State University, Institute of River Ecosystems |
| Dr. Brian Dietterick | Cal Poly State University, San Luis Obispo |
| Dr. Cajun James | Sierra Pacific Industries |
| Mr. Gaylon Lee | State Water Resources Control Board |
| Mr. Gary Nakamura (Chair) | University of California Cooperative Extension |
| Dr. Sari Sommarstrom | Sari Sommarstrom & Associates |
| Dr. Kate Sullivan | Pacific Lumber Company |
| Dr. Bill Trush | McBain & Trush, Inc. |
| Dr. Michael Wopat | California Geological Survey |


# Staff


| | |
|---|---|
| Mr. Christopher Zimny | California Dept. of Forestry and Fire Protection |


Prepared as background for the 2007 Scientific Literature Review of Forest Management Effects on Riparian Functions in Anadromous Salmonid Fishes for the California Board of Forestry and Fire Protection.

To be cited as:

*California Board of Forestry and Fire Protection Technical Advisory Committee (CBOF-TAC). 2007. Primer on Wood Riparian Exchanges Related to Forest Management in the Western U.S. , Version 1.0. Sacramento, CA.*

# PRIMER: WOOD RIPARIAN EXCHANGE FUNCTION

(Abstracted from Hassan, Hogan, Bird, May, Gomi, and Campbell, Spatial and temporal dynamics of wood in headwater streams of the Pacific Northwest, Jour of the Amer Water Res Assn., Aug 2005.)

In general, wood within the channel boundary significantly alters flow hydraulics, regulates sediment transport and storage, and influences channel morphology and diversity of channel habitat (e.g., Swanson and Lienkaemper, 1978; Hogan, 1986; Bisson *et al.,* 1987; Montgomery *et al.,* 1995, 1996).

In-channel wood plays an important role in determining aquatic habitat conditions and riparian ecology (e.g., Bisson *et al.,* 1987; Bilby and Bisson, 1998).

Wood is introduced to the stream channel through a variety of processes including mass wasting, tree fall (blowdown), and bank erosion.

Fluvial and nonfluvial processes transport and redistribute wood introduced in upstream areas to downstream locations (e.g., Keller and Swanson, 1979; Lienkaemper and Swanson, 1987; Nakamura and Swanson, 1993; Hogan *et al.,* 1998; Johnson *et al.,* 2000a; Benda *et al.,* 2002, 2003; Lancaster *et al.,* 2003).

However, wood exerts its greatest geomorphic influence in channels with physical dimensions similar to or smaller than the size of wood (e.g., Bilby and Ward, 1989; Bilby and Bisson, 1998);
therefore, wood plays a disproportionately large role in small headwater streams.

Although wood dynamics and channel morphology of streams in the PNW have been studied in some detail, most of the research has occurred in relatively large streams and rivers (> third-order streams on 1:50,000-scale maps). Such results may not be applicable in headwater streams where episodic sediment and wood supply from adjacent hillslopes dominate channel dynamics and where fluvial transport of wood is restricted due to insufficient streamflow and narrow channels. The practical need to understand the physical and ecological roles of small streams has recently been highlighted by interest in restoring downstream ecosystems and the assessment of land management practices in relatively small watersheds (Moore and Richardson, 2003).

Interest in wood dynamics in headwater channels stems from the recognition that these channels represent a distinct class of stream, with characteristic morphologies, processes, and dynamics (see Benda *et al.,* 2005; Hassan *et al.,* 2005).

The focus is on the steeper portion of the channel network where episodic wood inputs and sediment from adjacent hillslopes exert significant control on channel dynamics and morphology. In these channels wood tends to accumulate, and sediment is stored upstream of accumulations, transforming steep bedrock channels into alluvial reaches (Massong and Montgomery, 2000; May and Gresswell, 2003b; Montgomery *et al.,*2003b).

In these streams, wood controls channel morphology by regulating the temporal, spatial character and the quantity of sediment stored within the channel zone, and this influences channel stability (e.g., Swanson *et al.,* 1982; Bilby and Ward, 1989).

The paper begins by defining small streams and addressing wood scaling issues relative to channel size. Then the paper reviews the current knowledge regarding each component of the wood budget in small streams. Next the paper discusses the spatial and temporal variability of wood in small streams, with special attention to geographic variability. Then an assessment of available models for the predicting wood dynamics in small streams is provided. The effect on wood dynamics of timber harvesting and riparian management on wood dynamics is considered. Finally, gaps in the knowledge are identified for future research on the wood dynamics in small streams. Due to the limited available information on small forested streams, certain information obtained from larger mountain rivers will be included in this review, and its applicability to small streams is assessed.

Table 1 – Definition of relative wood size and relative channel size. Matrix thresholds are arbitrary until further analysis justifies these classes. This scaling of wood to channel size allows use of studies in larger channels.

TABLE 2. Definition Matrix of Relative Wood Debris Size and Relative Channel Size.

| | Relative LWD Size Ll/Wb | | | Relative Channel Size Ll/Wb | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Ld/Db | < 0.3 | 0.3-1.0 | > 1.0 | < 0.3 | 0.3-1.0 | > 1.0 |
| <0.3 | S | M | L | Large | Intermediate | Small |
| 0.3-1.0 | M | L | L | Intermediate | Small | Small |
| > 1.0 | L | L | VL | Small | Small | Very Small |

Notes: Ll = log length; Ld = log diameter; Wb = channel bankfull width; Db = channel bankfull depth; S = small woody debris (SWD); M = intermediate wood debris (MWD); L = large woody debris (LWD); VL = very large organic debris; D = dominant grain size (~ $D_{95}$). D/Ld should be meaningful such that D/Ld: > 1 debris less important because bed material provides primary structural functionality; 0.3-1.0 debris more important and structurally functional; < 0.3 debris critically important.

Value of, need for, a wood budget to determine where wood comes from, where it is delivered to, where it is stored, how it is transported or depleted from a given drainage basin or stream reach.

From a forest management context there is potential to affect each component of the budget, so it is important to know the relative importance of each component and which are most susceptible to impact.

**Wood Recruitment**

The potential of landslides in mountainous landscapes can be increased by logging, road building, wind throw wildfire, earthquakes, and volcanic activity (Harmon *et al.,* 1986; Lienkaemper  and Swanson, 1987; Nakamura and Swanson, 2003).

Research in the PNW has shown that landslides can provide a substantial quantity of wood to headwater streams (Keller and Swanson, 1979; Schwab, 1998; Hogan *et al.,* 1998; May, 2002; May and Gresswell, 2003a; Reeves *et al.,* 2003).

In contrast, other studies in Alaska, California, and Washington have found that mass movements may be of limited importance in supplying wood to larger streams (Murphy and Koski, 1989; Johnson *et al.,* 2000a; Martin and Benda, 2001; Benda *et al.,* 2002; Gomi *et al.,* 2004; May and Gresswell, 2004).

Another wood source into small streams is snow avalanches, a process that commonly destroys forest stands in the runout pathway. Repeated avalanches down established pathways prevent the growth of mature forests, so this process may be associated with the recruitment of relatively small wood. Where snow avalanches are an important landscape process, they provide the greatest wood recruitment in areas where the channel and hillslopes are coupled (Dave McClung, The University of British Columbia, January 6, 2005, personal communication) (see Figure 1 below)

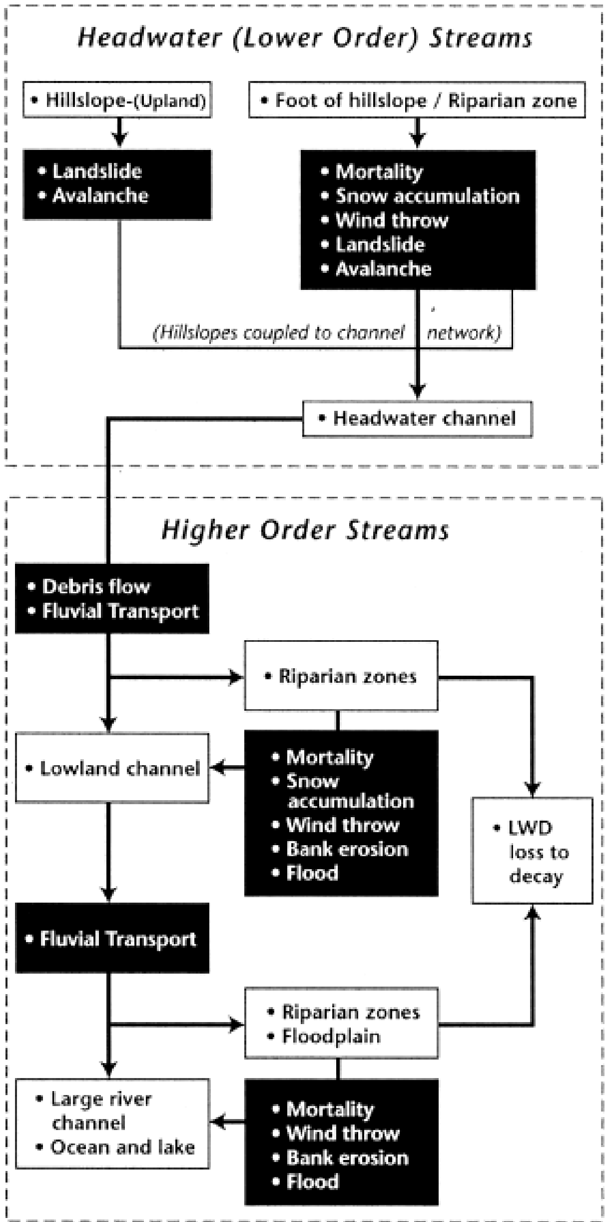



Figure 1. Flow Diagram for a Wood Budget in a Watershed. Open squares represent geomorphic areas related to locations for the sources and storages of wood, and filled squares represent processes that affect wood transport.

.

**Fires, insect infestations, and disease outbreaks are other processes that influence the recruitment of wood to streams.**

If high severity fires burn extensive areas around headwater streams, the amounts and characteristics of wood input to streams may be altered for long periods; wood inputs are likely to increase immediately after fires (Nakamura and Swanson, 2003). Burned wood may also break into smaller pieces that can choke the channel, thereby increasing channel instability and downstream fluvial transport of wood (e.g., Berg *et al.,* 2002). The degree of fire damage to stands depends on fire severity, type (ground, surface, or crown), and spatial extent (Agee, 1993). Patterns of mortality due to forest fire vary among regional fire regimes, season, and topography.

Compared to floodplains, upland areas, including small streams and riparian zones, are more frequently affected by forest fires because of their relatively dry conditions and strong winds (Agee, 1993). Fire can also affect the wood budget by altering the age structure of the forest, initiating episodic pulses of wood recruitment, consuming existing dead wood, and influencing the mobility of instream wood (Young, 1994; Tinker and Knight, 2000; Zelt and Wohl, 2004).

Finally, insect infestations and disease outbreaks can episodically affect stand mortality in large areas. In the PNW, many disease and insect outbreaks appear to be related to fire suppression or exotic pathogens (Hessburg *et al.,* 1994; Swetnam *et al.,* 1995; Dwire and Kauffman, 2003). However, most insects and diseases affect only a single tree species, so the net effect on wood recruitment will depend upon the composition of the stand (Harmon *et al.,* 1986).

Streambank erosion may not significantly contribute wood to steep headwater streams because the channel is constrained by the adjacent hillslopes (Nakamura and Swanson, 2003) and banks are often semi- or non-alluvial (e.g., Halwas and Church, 2002). Actual rates of bank erosion in headwater constrained streams are poorly documented but are believed to be minimal. However, in gentler areas with less bedrock constraints, bank erosion is likely (expected) to be a significant source of wood into channels. In headwater streams, wood is often suspended above the channel banks due to relatively narrow channel widths (relative to tree heights and diameters) and hillslope confinement. Direct input to the channel may not occur until a log is either broken or fragmented (Nakamura and Swanson, 1993).

**Wood storage**

Once delivered to the stream system, wood is stored for various durations in several different nvironments; these include areas in riparian zones and associated floodplains and within the channel boundaries (Figure 1, Table 3).

few studies have referenced the criterion used to determine that portion of the wood actually interacting with the stream and fluvial processes. Robison and Beschta (1990a) examined the storage of wood in distinct zones within the stream system and developed a classification system in which they identified and distinguished between wood within the channel and wood on the banks.

Storage of wood within a system can be likened to a wood reservoir that has a characteristic residence time (Keller and Tally, 1979; Hogan, 1989). Wood reservoirs can be used to study wood dynamics over a range of temporal and spatial scales. In headwater streams, the temporal scale is likely to be a function of the frequency and magnitude of the wood mobilizing events (see the following section).

### Wood output

Wood stored in the fluvial system is transferred out of a reach by downstream transport or lost through abrasion or *in-situ* decomposition.

Log stability in channels is controlled by many factors, including piece dimensions (length and diameter) relative to the channel, wood integrity, attached root wads, and degree of anchoring in the channel bed and bank (e.g., Montgomery *et al.,* 2003a,b).

Braudrick *et al.* (1997) suggested three mechanisms of wood transport: floating in a congested manner (high concentration) by streamflow, floating in an uncongested manner, and debris flows (for more details see the section on modeling).

Field studies show that log movement is more likely to occur as channel size increases and when logs are shorter than bankfull width, implying that fluvial transport of wood is more significant in higher order streams (e.g., Bilby and Bisson, 1998).

### Wood temporal and spatial variability

Threshold occurs that corresponds to channels approximately 5 m wide, which is similar to the pattern observed by Jackson and Sturm (2002).

**(Excerpted from Lassettre and Harris, 2002, The Geomorphic and Ecological Influence of Large Woody Debris in Streams and Rivers)**

Timber harvest activities in streamside forests can directly affect wood input. (Table 2, Swanson and Lienkaemper 1978, Bilby and Bisson 1998).

***Table 2.*** The effect of certain management practices on the characteristics and abundance of LWD within stream systems. Timber harvest temporarily reduces input or changes the physical characteristics of subsequent inputs. Flood control and road maintenance activities generally result in the removal of in-channel wood.

| MANAGEMENT PRACTICE | EFFECT | REFERENCES |
|---|---|---|
| Timber harvest | • Temporary reduction in LWD input | Bryant 1980, Andrus 1988, Murphy and Koski 1989 |
| | • Second growth input smaller, less rot resistant with less profound effects on physical habitat | Bilby and Ward 1991, Wood-Smith and Buffington 1996, Ralph et al. 1994 |
| | • Removal of logging residue simplifies physical habitat by failing to distinguish between naturally occurring habitat-forming logs and leftover material | Swanson et al. 1976, Swanson and Lienkaemper 1978, Beschta 1979, Bryant 1980, Keller and MacDonald 1983, Bilby 1984, Bisson et al. 1987, Bilby and Ward 1989 |
| | • Extremely large amounts of logging material reduces intragravel flow, increases biological oxygen demand, reduces space available for invertebrates, and blocks fish migration | Hall and Lantz 1968, Narver 1970, Brown 1974 |
| | • Destabilization of hillslopes and increase in debris avalanches | Swanson and Lienkaemper 1978 |
| | • Narrow buffer strips (<20 m to 30 m) potentially reduce wood input | McDade et al. 1990, Van Sickle and Gregory 1990 |
| | • Buffer strips adjacent to clearcuts have higher occurrence of windthrow and are depleted of large wood sources rapidly | Reid and Hilton 1998 |
| Flood control and road maintenance | • Remove wood to decrease channel roughness, increase conveyance, and maintain flood capacity | Marzolf 1978, Young 1991, Gippel et al. 1996 |
| | • Remove wood and clear jams to keep culverts and bridges free of debris and reduce structural damage during storms | Singer and Swanson 1983, Diehl 1997 |

The harvesting of streamside forests may temporarily reduce or eliminate LWD recruitment to the stream (Bryant 1980).

The recovery time for input to return to pre-harvest conditions may be quite long. Fifty years after logging, debris from the current stand of a western Oregon stream contributed only 14% of total LWD volume and only 7% of the wood from the current stand contributed to pool formation (Andrus et al. 1988).

The results indicate that some second growth stands must grow at least 50 years before trees contribute LWD in sizes and amounts similar to old growth forests. A decay model calibrated in southeastern Alaska predicted a 70% reduction in wood 90 years after clear-cutting, and that full recovery exceeded 250 years (Murphy and Koski 1989).

Streams flowing through second growth forests have a lower frequency of LWD associated pools and fewer channel spanning logs than old growth streams, leading to a scour pool dominated system (Bilby and Ward 1991). Thus, in low to mid-order streams the percentage of LWD formed waterfalls and the control of wood on gradient is decreased by timber harvest.

Old growth logs are larger and retain more bedload sediment and fine organic debris. Fine organic debris influences the physical characteristics of large jams and may contribute to an increased diversity of pool types in old growth streams (Bilby and Ward 1991).

Changes in wood loading and abundance significantly alter stream morphology. Wood-Smith and Buffington (1993) showed that pool frequency, pool depth, and local shear stress were significantly different in logged versus unlogged streams.

Near-stream logging influences natural LWD input processes. Depending on the method, harvest activities destabilize hillslopes and increase the likelihood of debris avalanches (Swanson and Lienkaemper 1978).

Buffer strips are a common technique to reduce logging effects on forests and streams. Most LWD inputs come from within 20 m to 30 m of the stream channel and buffers more narrow than this zone of input potentially reduce the amount of available logs (McDade et al. 1990, Van Sickle and Gregory 1990).

Buffer strips adjacent to clearcuts are exposed to higher wind velocities, increasing the occurrence of windthrown logs to the stream channel (Reid and Hilton 1998).

In moderate to high gradient streams, logs play an important role in bedload storage (Figure 2), and the removal of LWD eliminates potential storage sites (Beschta 1979, Bilby 1984, Bilby and Ward 1989).

The decrease in storage capacity and subsequent release of sediment simplifies physical habitat by filling in the deepest pools, reducing pool area, and smoothing channel gradient (Sullivan et al. 1987, Dominguez and Cederholm 2000).

Debris removal affects salmonid populations by decreasing the amount of available hydraulic cover available during winter high flows, and by reducing stream wetted width and perimeter (Dolloff 1986, Elliott 1986).

Alternatively, an excessive amount of logging material left in the stream may be damaging to fish populations. Fine debris lying on the gravel surface impedes interchange between intragravel flow and surface water, reducing subsurface dissolved oxygen levels (Hall and Lantz 1969, Narver 1970, Brown 1974).

Reduced oxygen availability retards the development of salmonid embryos within the gravel. The decomposition of wood increases biological oxygen demand, further reducing available dissolved oxygen (Narver 1970).

Small pieces of wood and bark occupy interstitial pores, reducing the available living space for stream invertebrates (Narver 1970).

Very large human induced accumulations of wood prevent upstream migration of anadromous salmonids (Brown 1974). Much historical management of LWD in logged streams concentrated on the removal of excess debris to allow fish passage (Bilby and Bisson 1998).

In systems influenced by human infrastructure, road maintenance and flood control activities affect the abundance of large wood. Logs and riparian vegetation increase channel roughness, reduce conveyance, and are commonly removed by managers to maintain flood capacity (Marzolf 1978, Singer and Swanson 1983, Young 1991, Gippel et al. 1996).

Possibly the first step in improving the management of LWD in California stream systems is to recognize the different roles it plays in different parts of the watershed. The stream classification proposed below explicitly does that.

***Table 3.*** The gradient range and general characteristics of reach morphologies in alluvial channels (Data taken from Bisson and Montgomery 1996 and Montgomery and Buffington 1997).

| | CASCADE | STEP-POOL | PLANE-BED | POOL RIFFLE |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| GRADIENT | • 0.08 to 0.30 | • 0.04 to 0.08 | • 0.01 to 0.04 | • 0.001 to 0.02 |
| BED MATERIAL | • Boulder | • Cobble/boulder | • Gravel/cobble | • Gravel |
| CONFINEMENT | • Confined | • Confined | • Variable | • Unconfined |

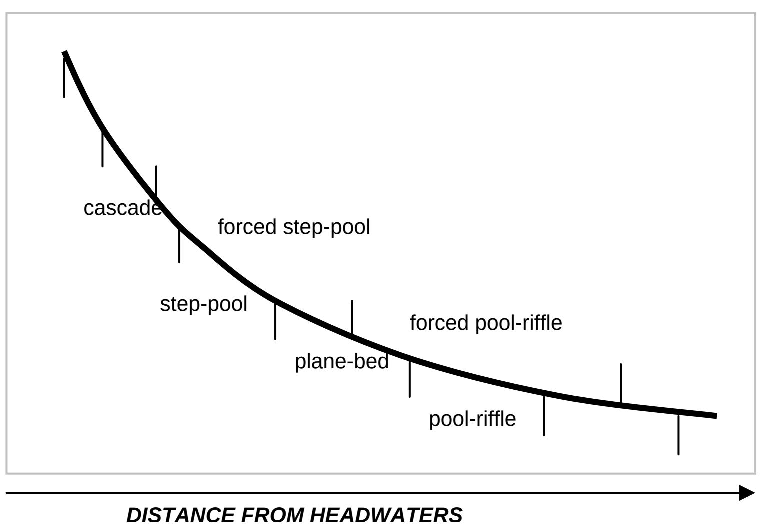



***Figure 2.*** Generalized long profile of alluvial channels showing spatial arrangement of reach morphologies, including forced step-pool and forced pool-riffle morphologies. Forced morphologies extend beyond the gradient range of free-formed counterparts. Gradient ranges of forced morphologies depicted above are interpreted from Montgomery et al. (1995) and Beechie and Sibley (1997). The classifications are based on geomorphic processes and reflect basin

wide trends in sediment transport and storage (Figure adapted from Montgomery and Buffington 1997).

To ensure future supplies of LWD to stream channels, buffer strips serving as reservoirs of wood supply should be wide enough to encompass the zone of LWD input, typically within 20 m to 30 m of the stream channel (Lienkaemper and Swanson 1987, McDade et al. 1990, Van Sickle and Gregory 1990).
Some researchers have argued for larger buffers, based on susceptibility of buffer strips next to clear-cuts to blow-down and rapid depletion of available streamside wood (Reid and Hilton 1998).

The use of a selectively logged fringe buffer adjacent to the streamside buffer may serve to reduce abnormally high rates of windthrow and preserve natural input rates. Any selective cutting within buffer strips should leave an abundant supply of the largest trees for recruitment (Murphy and Koski 1989, Abbe and Montgomery 1996).

The use of a selectively logged fringe buffer adjacent to the streamside buffer may serve to reduce abnormally high rates of windthrow and preserve natural input rates. Any selective cutting within buffer strips should leave an abundant supply of the largest trees for recruitment (Murphy and Koski 1989, Abbe and Montgomery 1996).

Species, diameter, and wood decay rates influence the amount of wood recruitment potentially necessary (Murphy and Koski 1989).

Along with the diameter and length of pieces of large wood, the riparian plant species involved largely determine the processing (turnover) time of large wood in streams. (e.g. Anderson et al. 1978; Anderson and Sedell 1979). The actual rate at which large wood of a given species is processed in a stream is a function of temperature, oxygen, moisture, microbial metabolism, invertebrate ingestion, and mechanical abrasion. Completely submerged wood is processed a great deal more slowly than damp wood , on which terrestrial fungal and invertebrate agents can act. (Harmon et al. 1986). In general, wood of hard wood species is processed more rapidly than that of coniferous species. For example, red alder is among the most rapidly and Douglas fir is among the slowest (Anderson et al. 1978). These differences is disappearance rates of the wood types are primarily dependent upon the relative activities of biological agents (microbes and invertebrates) on the wood (Harmon et al. 1986).

***Table 4.*** The possible management implications of preserving LWD input, transport, and presence within the stream channel.

| MANAGEMENT PRACTICE | IMPLICATION | REFERENCES |
|---|---|---|
| Timber harvest | • Buffer strips should be wider than zone of LWD input | McDade et al. 1991, Van Sickle and Gregory 1990 |
| | • Fringe buffers can protect streamside buffers from premature wood depletion | Reid and Hilton 1998 |
| | • Selective management in buffers should consider future input required based on instream surveys | Bilby and Ward 1989, Murphy and Koski 1989 |
| | • Selective management should leave large trees that will be stable and influence channel morphology | Fetherston et al. 1995, Abbe and Montgomery 1996 |
| | • Active management of buffer zones can increase recruitment of certain species and sizes of wood | Beechie and Sibley 1997 |
| | • Removal of logging debris best dealt with by selective removal | Bryant 1983, Bilby 1984, Gurnell et al. 1995 |
| | • Knowledge of habitat conditions, and the size and abundance of LWD required to maintain conditions must be considered when removing instream wood | Bryant 1983, Bilby 1984 |
| | • Characteristics of unmanaged streams should guide re-introduction of wood | Smith et al. 1993a, b, Montgomery et al. 1995, Abbe and Montgomery 1996, Beechie and Sibley 1997, Montgomery and Buffington 1997 |
| Flood control and road maintenance | • Must gain quantitative understanding of effect of wood on flood heights and how moves through a system | Young 1991, Braudrick et al. 1997, Braudrick and Grant 2000 |
| | • Design and modify bridges and culverts to allow for passage of woody debris | Diehl 1997, Flanagan et al. 1998 |
| | • Develop management that recognizes ecological value and impact of wood on human infrastructure and public safety | Singer and Swanson 1983, Piegay and Landon 1997 |

Forest managers should seek to increase the recruitment of certain species, primarily conifers which produce the largest and longest lasting LWD. This may involve active management of deciduous riparian zones to promote conifer establishment and growth (Beechie and Sibley 1997). This strategy should be considered in relation to position within the channel network. Small channels (<10 m width) can form pools around smaller pieces of wood (<20 cm), such as alder logs. Large to intermediate channels require greater diameter logs to form pools (>60 cm). Data on variations in the size and amount of woody debris with changing stream size could be used to develop plans for numbers and sizes of trees to be achieved (Bilby and Ward 1989).

## Wood Primer References (Lassettre and Harris, 2002)


Abbe, T. B. and D. R. Montgomery. 1996. Large woody debris jams, channel hydraulics and habitat formation in large rivers. Regulated Rivers: Research and Management 12: 210-221.

Adenlof, K. A. and E. E. Wohl. 1994. Controls on bedload movement in a Sub-Alpine Stream of the Colorado Rocky-Mountains, Usa. Arct. Alp. Res. 26: 77-85.

Anderson, N.H., J.R. Sedell, M. Roberts, and F.J. Triska. 1978. The role of aquatic invertebrates in processing of wood debris in coniferous forest streams. The American Midland Naturalist 100(1): 64-82.

Anderson, N. H. and J. R. Sedell. 1979. Detritus processing by macroinvertebrates in stream ecosystems. Ann. Rev. Entomol. 24: 351-302.

Andrus, C. W., B. A. Long, and H. A. Froehlich. 1988. Woody debris and its contribution to pool formation in a coastal stream 50 years after logging. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Management 45: 2080-2086.

Angermeier, P. L. and J. R. Karr. 1984. Relationships between woody debris and fish habitat in a small warmwater stream. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 113: 716-726.

Assani, A. A. and F. Petit. 1995. Log-Jam Effects On Bed-Load Mobility from Experiments Conducted in a Small Gravel-Bed Forest Ditch. Catena 25: 117-126.

Aumen, N. G., C. P. Hawkins, and S. V. Gregory. 1990. Influence of woody debris on nutrient retention in catastrophically disturbed streams. Hydrobiologia 190: 183-192.

Beechie, T.J. and S. Bolton. 1999. An approach to restoring salmonid habitat forming processes in Pacific Northwest watersheds. Fisheries: 24(4): 6-15.

Beechie, T. J. and T. H. Sibley. 1997. Relationships between channel characteristics, woody debris, and fish habitat in northwestern Washington streams. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 126: 217-229.

Berg, N., A. Carlson, and D. Azuma. 1998. Function and dynamics of woody debris in stream reaches in the central Sierra Nevada, California. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 55: 1807-1820.

Beschta, R. L. 1979. Debris removal and its effects on sedimentation in an Oregon Coast Range stream. Northwest Science 53: 71-77.

Bilby, R. E. 1981. Role of organic debris dams in regulating the export of dissolved organic and particulate matter from a forested watershed. Ecology 62: 1234-1243.

Bilby, R. E. 1984. Removal of woody debris may affect stream channel stability. Journal of Forestry 82: 609-613.

Bilby, R. E. and P. A. Bisson. 1998. Functioning and distribution of large woody debris. River Ecology and Management. In: River Ecology and Management, R. J. Naiman and R. E. Bilby, eds: 324-346. Springer, New York, New York, USA.

Bilby, R. E. and G. E. Likens. 1980. Importance of organic debris dams in the structure and function of stream ecosystems. Ecology 61: 1107-1113.

Bilby, R. E. and J. W. Ward. 1989. Changes in characteristics and function of woody debris with increasing size of streams in western Washington. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 118: 368-378.

Bilby, R. E. and J. W. Ward. 1991. Characteristics and function of large woody debris in streams draining old growth, clear-cut, and second-growth forests in southwestern Washington. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 48: 2499-2508.

Bisson, P. A., R. E. Bilby, M. D. Bryant, C. A. Dolloff, G. B. Grette, R. A. House, M. L. Murphy, K. V. Koski, and J. R. Sedell. 1987. Large woody debris in forested streams in the Pacific Northwest: past, present, and future. Streamside Management: Forestry and Fishery Interactions. E. O. Salo and T. W. Cundy. Seattle, Washington, University of Washington, Institute of Forest Resources**:** 143-190.

Bisson, P. A. and D. R. Montgomery. 1996. Valley segments, stream reaches, and channel units. Methods in Stream Ecology. Hauer R. and G.A. Lamberti, Acdemic Press, San Diego, California, USA.

Bisson, P.A. and J. R. Sedell. 1984. Salmonid populations in streams in clearcut vs. old-growth forests of western Washington. In: Fish and Wildlife Relationships in Old Growth Forests, W.R. Meehan, T.R. Merrel, T.A. Hanley, eds. American Institute of Fisheries Biologists, Juneau, Alaska, USA.

Bjornn, T. C. and D.W. Reiser. 1991. Habitat requirements of salmonids in streams. American Fisheries Society Special Publication 19: 83-138.

Boussu, M. F. 1954. Relationship between trout populations and cover on a small stream. Journal of Wildlife Management 18: 229-239.

Braudrick, C. A. and G. E. Grant. 2000. When do logs move in rivers? Water Resources Research 36: 571-584.

Braudrick, C. A., G. E. Grant, Y. Ishikawa, and H. Ikeda. 1997. Dynamics of wood transport in streams: A flume experiment. Earth Surface Processes and Landforms 22: 669-683.

Brown, G. W. 1974. Fish habitat. Environmental effects of forest residues management in the Pacific Northwest: a state-of-knowledge compendium. O. P. Cramer. Portland, Oregon, USDA Forest Service. PNW-124: E1-E15.

Bryant, M. D. 1980. Evolution of large, organic debris after timber harvest: Maybeso Creek, 1949 to 1978. USDA Forest Service, General Technical Report, PNW-101.

Bryant, M. D. 1983. The role and management of woody debris in west coast salmonid nursery streams. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 3: 322-330.

Bryant, M. D. 1985. Changes 30 Years after Logging in Large Woody Debris and Its Use by Salmonids. USDA Forest Service, General Technical Report, RM-120.

Bryant, M.D. and J.R. Sedell. 1995. Riparian forests, wood in the water, and fish habitat complexity. Pages 202-223 in N.B. Armantrout and J.R. Sedell (eds) Condition of the World's Aquatic Habitats. Proceedings of the World Fisheries Congress, Theme 1, American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, MD.

Carlson, J. Y., C. W. Andrus, and H. A. Froehlich. 1990. Woody debris, channel features, and macroinvertebrates of streams with logged and undisturbed riparian timber in northeastern Oregon, USA. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 47: 1103-1111.

Cederholm, C. J., R. E. Bilby, P. A. Bisson, T. W. Bumstead, B. R. Fransen, W. J. Scarlett, and J. W. Ward. 1997. Response of juvenile coho salmon and steelhead to placement of large woody debris in a coastal Washington stream. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 17: 947-963.

Cederholm, C. J., D. B. Houston, D. L. Cole, and W. J. Scarlett. 1989. Fate of coho salmon (Oncorhynchus kisutch) carcasses in spawning streams. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 46: 1347-1355.

Cederholm, C. J. and N. P. Peterson. 1985. The retention of Coho salmon Oncorhynchus kisutch carcasses by organic debris in small streams. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 42: 1222-1225.

Crispin, V., R. House, and D. Roberts. 1993. Changes in instream habitat large woody debris and salmon habitat after the restructuring of a coastal Oregon stream. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 13: 96-102.

Culp, J. M., G. J. Scrimgeour, and G. D. Townsend. 1996. Simulated fine woody debris accumulations in a stream increase rainbow trout fry abundance. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 125: 472-479.

Davis, R. J. and K. J. Gregory. 1994. A new distinct mechanism of river bank erosion in a forested catchment. Journal of Hydrology 157: 1-11.

Diehl, T. H. 1997. Potential Drift Accumulation at Bridges. US Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Transportation, FHWA-RD-97-028.

Dolloff, C. A. 1986. Effects of stream cleaning on juvenile coho salmon and Dolly Varden in southeast Alaska [USA]. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 115: 743-755.

Dolloff, C. A. and G. H. Reeves. 1990. Microhabitat partitioning among stream-dwelling juvenile coho salmon, Oncorhynchus kisutch, and Dolly Varden, Salvelinus malma. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 47: 2297-2306.

Dominguez, L. G. and C. J. Cederholm. 2000. Rehabilitating stream channels using large woody debris with considerations for salmonid life history and fluvial geomorphic processes. In: Sustainable Fisheries Management: Pacific Salmon, E. E. Knudsen. C. R. Steward, D. D. MacDonald, J. E. Williams, and D. W. Reiser, eds: 545-563. Lewis Publishers, New York, New York, USA.

Dudley, S. J., J. C. Fischenich, and S. R. Abt. 1998. Effect of woody debris entrapment on flow resistance. Journal Of The American Water Resources Association 34: 1189-1197.

Dudley, T, and N. H. Anderson. 1982. A survey of invertebrates associated with wood debris in aquatic habitats. Melanderia 39: 1-21.

Elliott, S. T. 1986. Reduction of a Dolly Varden [*Salvelinus malma*] population and macrobenthos after removal of logging debris. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 115: 392-400.

Elmore, W. and R. L. Beschta. 1989. The fallacy of structures and the fortitude of vegetation. California Riparian Systems Conference, University of California, Davis: 117-119. USDA Forest Service General Technical Report, PSW-110.

Elosegi, A., J. R. Diez, and J. Pozo. 1999. Abundance, characteristics, and movement of woody debris in four Basque streams. Archiv Fur Hydrobiologie 144: 455-471.

Everett, R. A. and G. M. Ruiz. 1993. Coarse woody debris as a refuge from predation in aquatic communities an experimental test. Oecologia (Berlin) 93: 475-486.

Fausch, K. D. and T. G. Northcote. 1992. Large woody debris and salmonid habitat in a small coastal British Columbia stream. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 49: 682-693.

Fetherston, K. L., R. J. Naiman, and R. E. Bilby. 1995. Large woody debris, physical process, and riparian forest development in montane river networks of the Pacific Northwest. Geomorphology 13: 133-144.

Flanagan, S. A., M. J. Furniss, T. S. Ledwith, S. Theissen, M. Love, K. Moore, and J. Ory. 1998. Methods for inventory and environmental risk assessment of road drainage crossings. USDA Forest Service, Pacific Southwest Region.

Flebbe, P. A. 1999. Trout use of woody debris and habitat in Wine Spring Creek, North Carolina. Forest Ecology and Management 114: 367-375.

Flebbe, P. A. and C. A. Dolloff. 1995. Trout use of woody debris and habitat in Appalachian wilderness streams of North Carolina. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 15: 579-590.

Froehlich, H. A. 1970. Logging debris: managing a problem. Forest Land Uses and Stream Environment, Corvallis, Oregon: 112-117. Oregon State University.

Froehlich, H.A. 1973. Natural and man-caused slash in headwater streams. Loggers Handbook XXXIII. Pacific Logging Congress, Portland, Oregon, USA.

Furniss, M. J., T. D. Roelofs, and C. S. Yee. 1991. Road construction and maintenance. American Fisheries Society Special Publication 19: 297-325.

Gippel, C. J. 1995. Environmental hydraulics of large woody debris in streams and rivers. Journal of Environmental Engineering-ASCE 121: 388-395.

Gippel, C. J., B. L. Finlayson, and I. C. O'Neill. 1996. Distribution and hydraulic significance of large woody debris in a lowland Australian river. Hydrobiologia 318: 179-194.

Gowan, C. and K. D. Fausch. 1996. Long-term demographic responses of trout populations to habitat manipulation in six Colorado streams. Ecological Applications 6: 931-946.

Gregory, K.J. and R.J. Davis. 1992. Coarse woody debris in stream channels in relation to river channel management in woodland areas. Regulated Rivers: Research and Management 7: 117-136.

Gregory, K. J., R. J. Davis, and S. Tooth. 1993. Spatial-distribution of coarse woody debris dams in the Lymington Basin, Hampshire, UK. Geomorphology 6: 207-224.

Gregory, S.V., F.J. Swanson, W.A. McKee, and K.W. Cummins. 1991. An ecosystem perspective of riparian zones. BioScience 41(8): 541-551.

Grizzel, J. D. and N. Wolff. 1998. Occurrence of windthrow in forest buffer strips and its effect on small streams in northwest Washington. Northwest Science 72: 214-223.

Gurnell, A. M., K. J. Gregory, and G. E. Petts. 1995. The Role of Coarse Woody Debris in Forest Aquatic Habitats - Implications for Management. Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems 5: 143-166.

Gurnell, A. M. and R. Sweet. 1998. The distribution of large woody debris accumulations and pools in relation to woodland stream management in a small, low- gradient stream. Earth Surface Processes and Landforms 23: 1101-1121.

Hall, J. D. and R. L. Lantz. 1968. Effects of logging on the habitat of coho salmon and cutthroat trout in coastal streams. Symposium on Salmon and Trout in Streams, University of British Columbia: 355-375. Institute of Fisheries, University of British Columbia.

Harmon, M. E., J. F. Franklin, F. J. Swanson, P. Sollins, S. V. Gregory, J. D. Lattin, N. H. Anderson, S. P. Cline, N. G. Aumen, J. R. Sedell, G. W. Lienkamper, et al. 1986. Ecology of Coarse Woody Debris in Temperate Ecosystems. Advances in Ecological Research. A. MacFadyen and E. D. Ford. New York, NY, Harcourt Brace Jovanovich. 15: 133-302.

Hartman, G. F., J. C. Scrivener, and T. E. McMahon. 1987. Saying that logging is either "good" or "bad" for fish doesn't tell you how to manage the system. The Forestry Chronicle 159-164.

Harvey, B. C. 1998. Influence of large woody debris on retention, immigration, and growth of coastal cutthroat trout (*Oncorhynchus clarki clarki*) in stream pools. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 55: 1902-1908.

Hax, C.L. and S.W. Golladay. 1993. Macroinvertebrate colonization and biofilm development and leaves and wood in a boreal river. Freswater Biology 29:79-87.

Hedin, L. O. 1990. Factors controlling sediment community respiration in woodland stream ecosystems. Oikos 57: 94-105.

Hedman, C. W., D. H. Van Lear, and W. T. Swank. 1996. In-stream large woody debris loading and riparian forest seral stage associations in the southern Appalachian Mountains. Canadian Journal of Forest Research 26: 1218-1227.

Heede, B. H. 1972. Flow and Channel Characteristics of Two High Mountain Streams. USDA Forest Service, Research Paper, RM-96.

Heede, B. H. 1985a. Channel adjustments to the removal of log steps: and experiment in a mountain stream. Environmental Management 9: 427-432.

Heede, B. H. 1985b. Interactions between streamside vegetation and stream dynamics. USDA Forest Service, General Technical Report, RM-120.

Heifetz, J., M. L. Murphy, and K. V. Koski. 1986. Effects of logging on winter habitat of juvenile salmonids in Alaskan [USA] streams. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 6: 52-58.

Hickin, E. J. 1984. Vegetation and river channel dynamics. Canadian Geographer 28: 111-126.

Hilderbrand, R. H., A. D. Lemly, C. A. Dolloff, and K. L. Harpster. 1997. Effects of large woody debris placement on stream channels and benthic macroinvertebrates. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 54: 931-939.

Hogan, D. L., S. A. Bird, and M. A. Hassan. 1998. Spatial and temporal evolution of small coastal gravel-bed streams: influence of forest management on channel morphology and fish habitats. Gravel-Bed Rivers in the Environment. P. C. Klingeman, R. L. Beschta, P. D. Komar and J. B. Bradley. Highlands Ranch, Colorado, Water Resources Publications**:** 1701-1720.

House, R. A. and P. L. Boehne. 1985. Evaluation of instream structures for salmonid spawning and rearing in a coastal Oregon stream. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 5: 283-295.

House, R. A. and P. L. Boehne. 1986. Effects of instream structures on salmonid habitat and populations in Tobe Creek, Oregon. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 6: 38-46.

Keller, E. A. and A. MacDonald. 1983. Large Organic Debris and Anadromous Fish Habitat in the Coastal Redwood Environment: The Hydrologic System. California Water Resources Center, University of California, Davis, Technical completion report.

Keller, E. A., A. MacDonald, T. Tally, and N. J. Merritt. 1985. Effects of large organic debris on channel morphology and sediment storage in selected tributaries of Redwood Creek, northwestern California. Geomorphic Processes and Aquatic Habitat in the Redwood Creek Basin, Northwestern California. K. M. Nolan, H. M. Kelsey and D. C. Maron. Vickburg, MS, US Geological Survey**:** 29.

Keller, E. A. and F. J. Swanson. 1979. Effects of large organic material on channel form and fluvial processes. Earth Surface Processes and Landforms 4: 361-380.

Keller, E. A. and T. Tally. 1979. Effects of large organic debris on channel form and fluvial processes in the Coastal Environment. Adjustments of the Fluvial System: Tenth Annual Geomorphology Symposium, Binghamton, New York: 361-390. Kendall Hunt Publishing.

Leopold, L. B., M. G. Wolman, J.P. Miller. 1964. Fluvial Processes in Geomorphology. W.H. Freeman and Company, San Francisco, CA, USA.

Lienkaemper, G. W. and F. J. Swanson. 1987. Dynamics of large woody debris in streams in old-growth Douglas-fir forests. Canadian Journal of Forest Research 17: 150-156.

Likens, G. E. and R. E. Bilby. 1982. Development, Maintenance, and Role of Organic-Debris Dams in New England Streams. USDA Forest Service, General Technical Report, PNW-141.

Lisle, T. E. 1986a. Effects of woody debris on anadromous salmonid habitat, Prince of Wales Island, southeast Alaska [USA]. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 6: 538-550.

Lisle, T. E. 1986b. Stabilization of a gravel channel by large streamside obstructions and bedrock bends, Jacoby Creek, northwestern California. Geological Society of America Bulletin 97: 999-1011.

Lisle, T. E. and M. B. Napolitano. 1998. Effects of recent logging on the main channel of North Fork Caspar Creek. In: Proceedings of the conference on coastal watersheds: The Caspar Creek Story, R. R. Zeimer eds. USDA Forest Service General Technical Report PSW-GTR 168: 81-86.

Martin, D. J., L. J. Wasserman, and V. H. Dale. 1986. Influence of riparian vegetation on posteruption survival of coho salmon [Oncorhynchus kisutch] fingerlings on the west-side streams of Mount St. Helens, Washington [USA]. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 6: 1-8.

Marzolf, G. R. 1978. The Potential Effects of Clearing and Snagging on Stream Ecosystems. US Fish and Wildlife Service, Biological Services Program, FWS/OBS-78/14.

McDade, M. H., F. J. Swanson, W. A. McKee, J. F. Franklin, and J. Van Sickle. 1990. Source distances for coarse woody debris entering small streams in western Oregon and Washington [USA]. Canadian Journal of Forest Research 20: 326-330.

McHenry, M. L., E. Shott, R. H. Conrad, and G. B. Grette. 1998. Changes in the quantity and characteristics of large woody debris in streams of the Olympic Peninsula, Washington, U.S.A. (1982-1993). Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 55: 1395-1407.

McMahon, T. E. and G. F. Hartman. 1989. Influence of cover complexity and current velocity on winter habitat use by juvenile coho salmon (Oncorhynchus kisutch). Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 46: 1551-1557.

McMahon, T. E. and L. B. Holtby. 1992. Behavior, habitat use, and movements of coho salmon (Oncorhynchus kisutch) smolts during seaward migration. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 49: 1478-1485.

Megahan, W. F. 1982. Channel Sediment Storage Behind Obstructions in Forested Drainage Basins Draining the Granitic Bedrock of the Idaho Batholith. USDA Forest Service, General Technical Report, PNW-141.

Merritt, R.W. and K.W. Cummins eds. 1996. An Introduction to the Aquatic Insects of North America. Kendall-Hunt Publishing Company, Dubuque, Iowa, USA.

Montgomery, D. R., T. B. Abbe, J. M. Buffington, N. P. Peterson, K. M. Schmidt, and J. D. Stock. 1996. Distribution of bedrock and alluvial channels in forested mountain drainage basins. Nature 381: 587-589.

Montgomery, D. R. and J. M. Buffington. 1997. Channel-reach morphology in mountain drainage basins. Geol. Soc. Am. Bull. 109: 596-611.

Montgomery, D. R., J. M. Buffington, R. D. Smith, K. M. Schmidt, and G. Pess. 1995. Pool Spacing In Forest Channels. Water Resources Research 31: 9.

Moore, K. M. S. and S. V. Gregory. 1988. Response of young-of-the-year cutthroat trout to manipulation of habitat structure in a small stream. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 117: 162-170.

Murphy, M. L., J. Heifetz, S. W. Johnson, K. V. Koski, and J. F. Thedinga. 1986. Effects of clear-cut logging with and without buffer strips on juvenile salmonids in Alaskan streams [USA]. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 43: 1521-1533.

Murphy, M. L. and K. V. Koski. 1989. Input and depletion of woody debris in Alaska Streams and implications for streamside management. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 9: 427-436.

Myers, T. J. and S. Swanson. 1996. Long-term aquatic habitat restoration: Mahogany Creek, Nevada, as a case study. Water Resources Bulletin 32: 241-252.

Myers, T. J. and S. Swanson. 1996. Temporal and geomorphic variations of stream stability and morphology: Mahogany Creek, Nevada. Water Resources Bulletin 32: 253-265.

Nakamoto, R. J. 1998. Effects of timber harvest on aquatic invertebrates and habitat in North Fork Caspar Creek. In: Proceedings of the conference on coastal watersheds: The Caspar Creek Story, R. R. Zeimer eds. USDA Forest Service General Technical Report PSW-GTR 168: 87-96.

Nakamura, F. S. and F. J. Swanson. 1993. Effects of coarse woody debris on morphology and sediment storage of a mountain stream system in western Oregon. Earth Surface Processes and Landforms 18: 43-61.

Nakamura, F. and F. J. Swanson. 1994. Distribution of coarse woody debris in a mountain stream, western Cascade range, Oregon. Canadian Journal of Forest Research 24: 2395-2403.

Napolitano, M. B. 1998. Persistence of historical logging impacts on channel form in mainstem North Fork Caspar Creek. In: Proceedings of the conference on coastal watersheds: The Caspar Creek Story, R. R. Zeimer eds. USDA Forest Service General Technical Report PSW-GTR 168: 97-102.

Narver, D. W. 1970. Effects of logging debris on fish production. Forest Land Uses and Stream Environment, Corvallis, Oregon: 101-111. Oregon State University.

Newbold, J. D., J. W. Elwood, R. V. O'Neill, and W. Van Winkle. 1982. Nutrient spiraling in streams: implications for nutrient limitation and invertebrate activity. American Naturalist (120): 628-652.

O'Connor, M. D. 1986. Effects of Logging on Organic Debris Dams in First order Streams in Northern California. Master of Science. University of California, Berkeley, CA, 90pp.

O'Connor, M.D. 1994. Sediment Transport in Steep Tributary Streams and the Influence on Large Organic Debris. PhD Dissertation. University of Washington, Seattle, WA. 254pp. revised

O' Connor, M. D. and R. R. Zeimer. 1989. Coarse wood debris ecology in a second growth *Sequoia sempervirens* forest stream. California Riparian Systems Conference, University of California, Davis: 165-171. USDA Forest Service General Technical Report, PSW-110.

O'Connor, N. A. 1991. The effects of habitat complexity on the macroinvertebrates colonising wood substrates in a lowland stream. Oecologia 85: 504-512.

Palmer, M. A., P. Arensburger, A. P. Martin, and D. W. Denman. 1996. Disturbance and patch-specific responses: The interactive effects of woody debris and floods on lotic invertebrates. Oecologia (Berlin) 105: 247-257.

Pereira, C.R.D, N. H. Anderson, and T. Dudley. 1982. Gut content analysis of aquatic insects from wood substrates. Melanderia 39:23-33

Phillips, E. C. 1994. Habitat preference and seasonal abundance of trichoptera larvae in Ozark streams, Arkansas. Journal of Freshwater Ecology 9: 91-95.

Piegay, H. 1993. Nature, mass and preferential sites of coarse woody debris deposits in the lower Ain Valley (Mollon reach), France. Regulated Rivers: Research and Management 8: 359-372.

Piegay, H. and N. Landon. 1997. Promoting ecological management of riparian forests on the Drome river, France. Aquatic Conservation: Marine And Freshwater Ecosystems 7: 287-304.

Piegay, H. and R. A. Marston. 1998. Distribution of large woody debris along the outer bend of meanders in the Ain River, France. Physical Geography 19: 318-340.

Piegay, H., A. Thevenet, and A. Citterio. 1999. Input, storage and distribution of large woody debris along a mountain river continuum, the Drome River, France. Catena 35: 19-39.

Quinn, T. P. and N. P. Peterson. 1996. The influence of habitat complexity and fish size on over-winter survival and growth of individually marked juvenile coho salmon (Oncorhynchus kisutch) in Big Beef Creek, Washington. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 53: 1555-1564.

Ralph, S. C., G. C. Poole, L. L. Conquest, and R. J. Naiman. 1994. Stream channel morphology and woody debris in logged and unlogged basins of western Washington. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 51: 37-51.

Reid, L. M. and S. Hilton. 1998. Buffering the buffer. In: Proceedings of the conference on coastal watersheds: The Caspar Creek Story, R. R. Zeimer eds. USDA Forest Service General Technical Report PSW-GTR 168: 71-80.

Richmond, A. D. and K. D. Fausch. 1995. Characteristics and function of large woody debris in subalpine Rocky Mountain streams in northern Colorado. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 52: 1789-1802.

Riley, S. C. and K. D. Fausch. 1995. Trout population response to habitat enhancement in six northern Colorado streams. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 52: 34-53.

Robison, E. G. and R. L. Beschta. 1990. Coarse woody debris and channel morphology interactions for undisturbed streams in southeast Alaska, USA. Earth Surface Processes and Landforms 15: 149-156.

Sedell, J. R., P. A. Bisson, F. J. Swanson, and S. V. Gregory. 1988. What we know about large trees that fall into streams and rivers. From the forest to the sea: a story of fallen trees. Maser, C, R.F. Tarrant, J.M Trappe, and J.F. Franklin, USDA Forest Service General Technical Report PNW-GTR 229.

Sedell, J. R. and W. S. Duval. 1985. Influence of Forest and Rangeland Management on Anadromous Fish Habitat in Western North America, Volume 5: Water Transportation and Storage of Logs. USDA Forest Service, General Technical Report, PNW-186.

Sedell, J.R. and F.J. Swanson. 1984. Ecological characteristics of streams in old-growth forests of the Pacific Northwest. Pages 9-16 in Meehan, W.R., T.R. Merrell Jr., and T.A. Hanley (eds) Fish and Wildlife Relationships in Old-Growth Forests. Proceedings of a symposium sponsored by Alaska Institute of Fishery Research Biologists, Northwest Section of the Wildlife Society, and Alaska Council on Science and Technology, American Institute of Fishery Research Biologists, Morehead City, NC.

Shields, F. D. and N. R. Nunnally. 1984. Environmental aspects of clearing and snagging. Journal of Environmental Engineering 110: 152-165.

Shields, F. D. and R. H. Smith. 1992. Effects of large woody debris removal on physical characteristics of a sand-bed river. Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems 2: 145-163.

Shirvell, C. S. 1990. Role of instream rootwads as juvenile coho salmon (Oncorhynchus kisutch) and steelhead trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss) cover habitat under varying streamflows. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 47: 852-861.

Singer, S. and M. L. Swanson. 1983. Soquel Creek Storm Damage Recovery Plan. US Soil Conservation Service, Plan,

Smith, R. D., R. C. Sidle, and P. E. Porter. 1993a. Effects on bedload transport of experimental removal of woody debris from a forest gravel-bed stream. Earth Surface Processes and Landforms 18: 455-468.

Smith, R. D., R. C. Sidle, P. E. Porter, and J. R. Noel. 1993b. Effects of experimental removal of woody debris on the channel morphology of a forest, gravel-bed stream. Journal of Hydrology 152: 153-178.

Spalding, S., N. P. Peterson, and T. P. Quinn. 1995. Summer distribution, survival and growth of juvenile Coho Salmon under varying experimental conditions of brushy instream cover. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 124: 124-130.

Sullivan, K., T. E. Lisle, C. A. Dolloff, G. E. Grant, and L. M. Reid. 1987. Stream channels: the link between forests and fishes. Streamside Management: Forestry and Fishery Interactions. E. O. Salo and T. W. Cundy. Seattle, Washington, University of Washington, Institute of Forest Resources**:** 39-97.

Surfleet, C.G. and Ziemer, R.R. 1996. Effects of forest harvesting on large organic debris in coastal streams. Proceedings of the Conference On Coast Redwood Forest Ecology and Management: 134-136. Arcata, California, USA.

Swanson, F. J. and G. W. Lienkaemper. 1978. Physical consequences of large organic debris in pacific northwest streams. USDA Forest Service, General Technical Report, PNW-69.

Swanson, F.J. and G.W. Lienkaemper. 1979. Interactions among fluvial processes, forest vegetation, and aquatic ecosystems, South Hoh River, Olympic National Park, Washington. Proceedings of the Second Conference on Scientific research in the National Parks. San Francisco, Ca Nov. 26-30 1979. Vol. 7: 23-34.

Swanson, F. J., G. W. Lienkaemper, and J. R. Sedell. 1976. History, physical effects, and management implications of large organic debris in western Oregon streams. USDA Forest Service, General Technical Report, PNW-56.

Tally, T. 1980. The Effects of Geology and Large Organic Debris an Stream Channel Morphology and Process for Streams Flowing Through Old Growth Redwood Forests in Northwestern California. Doctor of Philosophy. University of California, Santa Barbara, Santa Barbara, CA, 273.

Tarzwell, C. M. 1937. Experimental evidence on the value of trout stream improvement in Michigan. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 66: 177-187.

Triska, F. J. and K. Cromack. 1980. The role of wood debris in forests and streams. Forests: Fresh Perspectives from Ecosystem Analysis, Corvallis, Oregon: 171-190. Oregon State University Press.

Trotter, E. H. 1990. Woody debris, forest-stream succession, and catchment geomorphology. Journal of the North American Benthological Society 9: 141-156.

Tschaplinski, P. J. and G. F. Hartman. 1983. Winter distribution of juvenile coho salmon (Oncorhynchus kisutch) before and after logging in Carnation Creek, British Columbia, and some implications for overwinter survival. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 40: 452-461.

Van Sickle, J. and S. V. Gregory. 1990. Modeling inputs of large woody debris to streams from falling trees. Canadian Journal of Forest Research 20: 1593-1601.

Vannote, R.L., G.W. Minshall, K.W. Cummins, J.R. Sedell, and C.E. Cushing. 1980. The river continuum concept. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 37:130-137.

Wallace, J. B., J. R. Webster, and J. L. Meyer. 1995. Influence of log additions on physical and biotic characteristics of a mountain stream. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 52: 2120-2137.

Ward, G. M. and N. G. Aumen. 1986. Woody debris as a source of fine particulate organic matter in coniferous forest stream ecosystems. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 43: 1635-1642.

Williams, P.B. and M. L. Swanson. 1989. A new approach to flood protection design and riparian management. California Riparian Systems Conference, University of California, Davis: 40-46. USDA Forest Service General Technical Report, PSW-110.

Wood-Smith, R. D. and J. M. Buffington. 1996. Multivariate geomorphic analysis of forest streams: Implications for assessment of land use impacts on channel condition. Earth Surface Processes and Landforms 21: 377-393.

Young, M. K. 1994. Movement and characteristics of stream-borne coarse woody debris in adjacent burned and undisturbed watersheds in Wyoming. Canadian Journal of Forest Research 24: 1933-1938.

Young, M. K. 1996. Summer movements and habitat use by Colorado River cutthroat trout (*Oncorhynchus clarki pleuriticus*) in small, montane streams. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 53: 1403-1408.

Young, W. J. 1991. Flume study of the hydraulic effects of large woody debris in lowland rivers. Regulated Rivers: Research and Management 6: 203-212.

CJ CJ 4/16/07

# APPENDIX 3C:  Primer: HEAT RIPARIAN EXCHANGE FUNCTION

# Primer
# on
# Heat
# Riparian Exchanges Related to Forest Management in the Western U.S.

Prepared by the
Technical Advisory Committee
of the
California Board of Forestry and Fire Protection

June 2007

Version 1.0

# Technical Advisory Committee Members

| | |
|---|---|
| Ms. Charlotte Ambrose | NOAA Fisheries |
| Dr. Marty Berbach | California Dept. of Fish and Game |
| Mr. Pete Cafferata | California Dept. of Forestry and Fire Protection |
| Dr. Ken Cummins | Humboldt State University, Institute of River Ecosystems |
| Dr. Brian Dietterick | Cal Poly State University, San Luis Obispo |
| Dr. Cajun James | Sierra Pacific Industries |
| Mr. Gaylon Lee | State Water Resources Control Board |
| Mr. Gary Nakamura (Chair) | University of California Cooperative Extension |
| Dr. Sari Sommarstrom | Sari Sommarstrom & Associates |
| Dr. Kate Sullivan | Pacific Lumber Company |
| Dr. Bill Trush | McBain & Trush, Inc. |
| Dr. Michael Wopat | California Geological Survey |

# Staff

| | |
|---|---|
| Mr. Christopher Zimny | California Dept. of Forestry and Fire Protection |

Prepared as background for the 2007 Scientific Literature Review of Forest Management Effects on Riparian Functions in Anadromous Salmonid Fishes for the California Board of Forestry and Fire Protection.

To be cited as:

*California Board of Forestry and Fire Protection Technical Advisory Committee (CBOF-TAC). 2007. Primer on Heat Riparian Exchanges Related to Forest Management in the Western U.S. , Version 1.0. Sacramento, CA.*

# PRIMER: HEAT RIPARIAN EXCHANGE FUNCTION: The Status of Knowledge for Heat Transfer Affecting Stream Temperature and Microclimate within Riparian Forest Buffers

This primer discusses the processes of heat transfer within riparian ecosystems and the effect of forest management on water temperature and microclimate. These interactions have been thoroughly and thoughtfully reviewed in a recent review article by R.D. Moore, D.L. Spittlehouse, and A. Story that appeared in the Journal of the American Watershed Resources Association (2005). This article was part of a compendium of review articles by leading researchers in the field. This review paper provides a very strong discussion of the mechanics of heat transfer and the role of riparian forests and stream factors in determining water temperature and microclimate characteristics in managed and unmanaged forest streams. The TAC adopts this review paper as the primary basis for the heat and microclimate primer.

> Moore, R. D, D.L. Spittlehouse, and A. Story. 2005. Riparian Microclimate and stream temperature response to forest harvesting: a review. Journal of the American Water Resources Association 41(4): 813-834.

The Moore et al. review paper (2005) was primarily focused on small streams, and does not thoroughly cover several topics important to the discussion of T&I rules in California. These include the effects of water temperature on salmon, and watershed-level temperature patterns. The TAC committee authored a discussion of these topics that reviews the scientific literature in some depth on these topics. These two documents together serve as the TAC's Primer on Heat Transfer and Microclimate in Riparian Areas. The TAC considers the literature reference lists attached to each of these two documents to be the supporting literature for the Primer. Because the fine print in the copy of the Moore et al. (2005) article included in this package may be difficult to read, we have reproduced a copy of the literature citations and included it behind the article.

Finally, the TAC developed a set of key questions that are meant to guide and focus the BOF literature review on the subject of riparian forests, heat transfer, microclimate, and salmon health. The TAC also has identified recent references that should serve as a core for that literature review.

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

SUMMARY OF THE EFFECTS OF FOREST HARVESTING ON RIPARIAN MICROCLIMATE AND STREAM TEMPERATURE--A SYNTHESIS OF KEY POINTS FROM MOORE ET AL. 2005 AND THE TAC DISCUSSION OF THE BIOLOGICAL EFFECTS OF TEMPERATURE ON SALMONIDS

This summary follows the organization of the Moore, Spittlehouse, and Story (2005) review of Temperature and Microclimate published in the Journal of the American Water Resources Association in 2005. Key points are taken from this paper and summarized here in bulletized form. A similar summary of the key points of the TAC-developed temperature biological effects and watershed temperature patterns is appended to this summary.

The bulletized points in this document faithfully summarize the key findings of the Moore et al.(2005) paper, and the TAC addendum. These concepts were developed with thorough referencing in the Moore et al. review article and the TAC primer. For ease of reading, little or no referencing is included in this summary. The reader is urged to read both documents provided after this summary.

## Introduction

1) There have been many studies of stream temperature and somewhat fewer for riparian microclimate.

2) There have been some excellent reviews previously (e.g. Beschta et al 1987).

3) There is still a lively debate about how to manage riparian zones to protect temperature and microclimate.

4) Most States require a riparian buffer to protect stream temperature and microclimate.

5) The Moore et al review (2005) concentrates on small streams in the Pacific Northwest.

# Riparian Microclimate

## *Characteristics of Forest Microclimates*

1) Forest canopies affect the microclimate and ultimately stream temperature because canopies intercept the transmission of radiation.
2) Tree species and stand densities affect evaporation processes, wind and light transmission.
3) Riparian areas typically have elevated water tables and higher soil moisture than adjacent upland areas.
4) Forest canopies tend to reduce the diurnal air temperature range compared to open areas (also reduce the soil temperature range).
5) Lower air temperatures under a canopy will also create higher humidity as well.
6) Relationship of riparian forest stands to topography will influence the extent, climate within, and effect on streams.

## *Edge Effects and the Microclimate of Riparian Buffers*

1) The magnitude of harvesting related changes in riparian microclimate will depend on the width of riparian buffers and how far edge effects extend into the buffer.

2) There have been studies of microclimate effects in forests, and to a more limited extent, riparian areas, around the world.

3) Much of the change in microclimate takes place within about 1 tree height (15 to 60 m) of the edge.

4) Solar radiation, wind speed, and soil temperature adjust to interior forest conditions more rapidly than do air temperature and relative humidity.

5) Edge orientation can be important, particularly when south facing.

6) Studies of microclimate in riparian areas are more limited. (Cites Ledwith from California: 1.6 deg C decrease in air temperature per 10 m of buffer up to 30 meters and 0.2 deg C per 10 m for widths from 30 m to 150 m.

7) Only one pre-harvest/post-harvest study (Washington). Gradients from stream into upland existed for all variables except solar radiation and windspeed. May have been enough to influence riparian fauna.

## Thermal Processes and Headwater Stream Temperature

1) An understanding of thermal processes is required as a basis for understanding stream temperature dynamics, in particular for interpreting and generalizing from experimental studies of forestry influences.

2) As a parcel of water flows through a stream reach, its temperature is a function of energy and water exchanges across the water surface and the streambed and banks, and changes as energy inputs change.

3) The temperature of a parcel of water represents the net heat exchange by radiation, turbulent exchange with the air (evaporation and convection), and conduction across the water surface and stream bed. If additional water is advected into the reach from groundwater or hyporheic exchange, the temperature of the parcel will also be determined by the volumetric mixing of the temperature of the incoming water (Figure 1).

   Energy is transferred to the stream and the surrounding environment by solar radiation. Energy is exchanged between the stream and the sky and atmosphere, the vegetation and/or surrounding topography, and the streambed. The potential for transferring heat among water, air, and vegetation is driven by the temperature gradients between them and the properties of each that determine how well each material transmits energy or conducts heat.

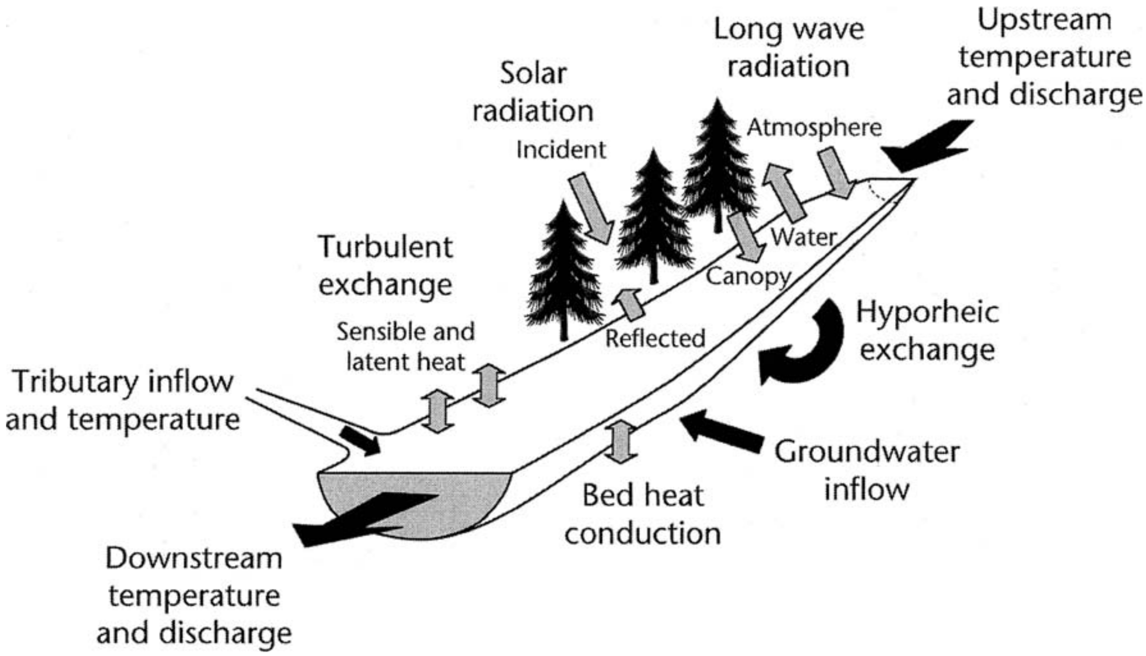
   Radiation inputs to a stream surface include incoming solar radiation (direct and diffuse) and longwave radiation emitted by the atmosphere, forest canopy and topography.

   Energy is exchanged between the water and air via convection (the transfer of heat from a surface to a moving fluid) and by evaporation. These processes are driven by wind speed and the vapor pressure and temperature of air.

   Energy is exchanged between the water and streambed via conduction.

4) A form of a reach energy balance equation is provided (Refer to Moore et al. 2005).

**Figure 1. Factors controlling stream temperature. Energy fluxes associated with water exchanges are shown as black arrows. (From Moore et al. 2005).**




## *Radiative Exchanges*

1) Radiation inputs to stream surface include incoming solar radiation (direct and diffuse) and long-wave radiation emitted by the atmosphere, forest canopy and topography.

2) Canopy will reduce the direct component of solar radiation and will redistribute some of the diffuse component. The details of solar radiation transmission through canopies are complex because of the complexities of the vegetation surfaces and materials and the horizontal and vertical variation in canopy density.

3) Channel morphology (wide, narrow, and topographically shaded) will influence how much energy exchange will be blocked by vegetation or topography. Stream orientation relative to the path of the sun can also affect how long the stream “sees” the sky during the day.

4) When direct radiation comes from +30 degrees above the horizon, most of it can be absorbed within the water column and by the bed, and thus is effective at stream heating. Vegetation or topography must block radiation within this sector of the sky view to be effective.

5) Low solar angles at dawn and dusk, and during much of the annual solar cycle are not effective at stream heating because direct radiation comes in at too low of an angle to be absorbed and is reflected. Vegetation within this sector of the sky view is not important in shading the stream.

6) Incoming longwave radiation will be a weighted sum of the emitted radiation from the atmosphere, surrounding terrain, and the canopy, with the weights being their respective view factors.

7) Peak daytime net radiation over a stream without sky view blocking from canopy or topography can be more than five times greater than that under a forest canopy during summer.

### *Sensible and Latent Heat Exchanges*

1) Energy is transferred between the water and the air by evaporation and convective heat transfer processes. Convection involves heat transfer between a fluid and an adjacent surface (air). Evaporation involves the transfer of heat energy with a mass of water to the air. Convective heat and mass transfer both depend strongly on the development of an aerodynamic boundary layer so they are strongly correlated to each other.
2) Natural convection is due to the motion of the fluid due to the temperature, and therefore density, differences at the surface and away from the surface. Forced convection is due to the movement of the fluid due to external forces such as wind. The rate at which energy is transferred by convection depends on the temperature difference between the water surface and overlying air, the wind speed, and the thermal conductivity of the air.
3) Evaporation depends on these factors, as well as the evaporative mass transfer coefficient as a function of wind speed.
4) Where the stream is warmer than the air, heat transfer away from the stream is promoted by the unstable temperature stratification. Where the air is warmer than the stream, the heat transfer from the air to the stream is dampened by the stable air temperature stratification.
5) Heat loss via evaporation can be a particularly effective dissipation mechanism at higher water temperatures for larger streams.
6) Heat energy exchange over very small stream may be limited by bank sheltering, particularly for narrow incised streams, potentially damping the effects of openness to the sky.

### *Bed Heat Exchanges and Thermal Regime of the Streambed*

1) Radiative energy absorbed at the streambed may be transferred to the water column by conduction and turbulent exchange and into the bed sediments directly by conduction and indirectly by advection in locations

where water infiltrates into the bed. Given that turbulent exchange is more effective at transferring heat than conduction, much of the energy absorbed at the bed is transferred into the water column, and the temperature at the surface of the bed will generally be close to the temperature of the water column, except where there may be local advection of water with a different temperature.

2) Energy is also transferred between the water and streambed by conduction (the transfer of energy at the molecular level). The direction and rate of transfer depends on the temperature gradients within the bed and the thermal conductivity properties of the bed material.

3) The bed will normally serve as a heat sink and thus act as a cooling influence on the water on summer days. At night the bed transfers heat back to the water, serving as a warming influence. The net effect is to reduce the diurnal temperature range.

4) Bed materials have different thermal conductivity. Bedrock is very effective at absorbing heat, while pebbly surfaces are less effective.

5) There is a thermal gradient within a streambed from surface to depth. The temperature of bed surface sediments will be reasonably close to water temperature, and will experience daily fluctuation along with the stream water.

6) Increase in water temperature from forest management effects can translate into the bed for some distance, depending on the type of bed materials and temperature of the surface water and on the local hydrologic environment. The low thermal diffusivity of the stationary bed prevents extensive transfer of heat downward so that daily temperature variations diminish as depth increases. Daily temperature variation diminishes significantly by 0.5 meters.

7) The decrease in bed temperature with depth is what allows water that downwells into the streambed to cool.

8) Bed temperatures may be important biologically. The temperature influences the incubation environment of salmonids and the conditions for benthic invertebrates.

## *Groundwater Inflow*

1) Groundwater is typically cooler than the stream’s daytime temperature and warmer during winter, and thus tends to moderate diurnal and seasonal temperature variation

2) Forest harvesting can increase soil moisture and groundwater levels

3) Increases in groundwater volume could act to promote cooling, or at least ameliorate warming.

4) Some have argued cutting could increase groundwater temperature due to greater flow volume with decreased interception losses and transpiration.

5) There is no published research [at the time of this paper] that has examined groundwater discharge and temperature both before and after harvest as a direct test of the hypothesis of groundwater warming.

## *Hyporheic Exchange*

1) Hyporheic exchange is a two-way transfer of water between a stream and its saturated sediments in the bed and riparian zone.

2) Stream water typically flows into the bed at the top of a riffle and re-emerges at the bottom of a riffle. If the temperature of hyporheic water discharging into a stream differs from stream temperature, then hyporheic exchange can influence stream temperature proportional to its volume and temperature.

3) Hyporheic exchange can create local thermal heterogeneity and it can be important for creating microhabitat characteristics of water temperature in relation to both local and reach scale temperature patterns in headwater streams.

4) There are significant methodological problems associated with quantifying rates of hyporheic exchange and its influence on stream temperature.

## *Tributary Inflow*

The effects of tributary inflow depend on the temperature difference between inflow and stream temperatures and on the relative contribution to discharge and can be characterized by a simple mixing equation.

$$T_m = f_1T_1 + f_2T_2$$

where T is the inflow temperature and f is the proportional volume of the water bodies that join.

## *Longitudinal Dispersion and Effects of Pools*

1) Longitudinal dispersion results from variation in velocity through the

cross-section of a stream. Any effects on temperature distribution have not been well studied, but could smooth and dampen effects downstream.

2) Deeper pools may have incomplete mixing creating thermal stratification.

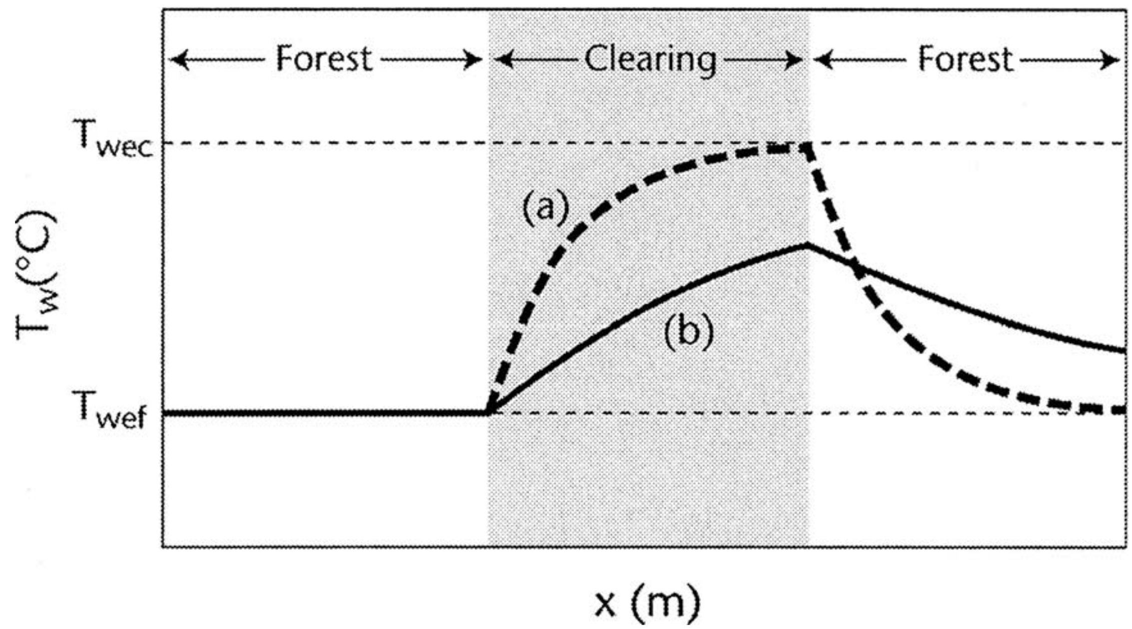
## *Equilibrium Temperature and Adjustment to Changes in Thermal Environment*

1) For a given set of boundary conditions (e.g., solar radiation, air temperature, humidity, wind speed) there will be an "equilibrium" water temperature that will produce a net energy exchange of zero and thus no further change in temperature as water flows downstream.
2) There is a maximum possible temperature a parcel of water can achieve as it flows through a reach at a given time, assuming that boundary conditions remain constant in time and space.
3) The thermal environment changes spatially with new representative conditions in important driving environmental variables such as stream width, flow volume, view factor. The thermal environment changes in time with the daily and annual solar cycle. Changes in conditions will cause changes in the maximum temperature.
4) Equilibrium temperature may not be achieved because the boundary conditions may change in time and space before the water parcel can adjust fully to each thermal environment. A natural factor potentially limiting the downstream distance of thermal effects in small streams is the daily fluctuation of temperature with the solar cycle. Effects experienced in an upstream reach may be lost downstream as the stream cools at night.
5) Equilibrium temperature will be lower where there is substantial inflow of cooler groundwater and will be higher for unshaded reaches due to solar input.
6) The rate at which a parcel of water adjusts to a change in the thermal environment depends on stream depth because for deeper streams, heat would be added to or drawn from a greater volume of water per unit area. The deeper the stream, the less the diurnal fluctuation at the same solar input because of the thermal inertia of the water.
7) The temperature in shallow streams adjusts quickly to a change in thermal environment and solar radiation.
8) Flow velocity influences the length of time the parcel of water is exposed to a specific thermal environment. The speed with which the water parcel moves determines whether it can adjust fully to that thermal

environment before it passes into a new one.

9) Given that the depth and velocity of a stream tend to increase with discharge, the sensitivity of stream temperature to a given set of energy inputs should increase as discharge decreases.

**Figure 2. Schematic temperature patterns along a stream flowing from intact forest, through a clear-cut, and back under intact forest for (a) shallow, low velocity and (b) deep, high velocity conditions. (Twef = equilibrium temperature in forest; Twec = equilibrium temperature in clearing) (From Moore et al. 2005).**




## *Thermal Trends and Heterogeneity Within Stream Networks*

1) Small streams tend to be colder and exhibit less diurnal variability when shaded than larger downstream reaches... Small streams tend to be more heavily shaded, often have a higher ratio of groundwater inflow, and are often located at higher elevations (cooler air).

2) Local deviations from a dominant downstream warming trend may occur as a result of ground water inflow, hyporheic exchange, advection of water from other sources, or even changes in dominant variables such as air temperature.

3) Thermal heterogeneity has been documented at a range of spatial

scales:  within a pool, within a stream reach, within a river system.

## Stream Temperature Response to Forest Management

1) Many studies of the effects of forest management on stream temperature have occurred.

2) Some have BACI experimental design, some do not.

3) Most studies have been conducted in the PNW in rain-dominated climates.

### *Influences of Forest Harvesting Without Riparian Buffers*

1) Almost all streams that have buffers removed increase in summertime temperature.

2) Harsh treatment yields high temperature response.

3) Results appear to be more mixed in more recent years with changes in forest practices that limit forest management in the riparian area.

4) Response in snowmelt-dominated areas is not well studied. However, there may be similar increases in stream temperature with canopy removal.

5) Winter temperatures have also not been well studied.

### *Influences of Forest Harvesting With Riparian Buffers*

1) Studies in rain-dominated catchments suggest that buffers may reduce, but not entirely protect against increases in summer stream temperature. However, temperature increase is generally more moderate or very small when a buffer is left.

2) Two studies in snow-dominated areas in Canada have also shown an increase in temperature with complete canopy removal of 1 to more than 5$^{o}$C for a set of streams subject to a range of forest management treatments.

3) The protective effect of buffers can be compromised by blow-down.

## *Thermal Recovery Through Time*

1) Post-harvest temperatures should decrease through time as riparian vegetation recovers.

2) Shade levels recover more rapidly in wetter forest types and at lower elevations.

3) Effects seem to last 5-10 years if riparian vegetation is allowed to recover.

4) Riparian canopy recovered more slowly when debris flows and channel disturbances affected streamside vegetation.

5) A study in subboreal B.C. suggested that shading by low vegetation may not be as effective at protecting water temperature as that from trees.

## *Comparison With Studies Outside The Pacific Northwest*

1) Studies conducted elsewhere in the world are in many ways consistent with results from the PNW as dictated by the physics of heat transfer.

2) However, differences in important environmental variables, experimental techniques, and forestry practices limit the comparability of results.

## *Effects of Forest Roads*

1) Some evidence for very small streams that even a road-right-of-way cut can be of sufficient length to cause local heating.

## *Downstream and Cumulative Effects*

1) There can be a watershed level response to forest management, including a direct effect in disturbed reaches and by an upstream to downstream translation of temperature.

2) Downstream transmission of heated water would increase the spatial extent of warmer temperatures.

3) There is a debate about whether down-stream cooling (how much, how fast) can have a significant effect. Some studies show cooling or heating, while others do not.

4) Streams can cool in the downstream direction by dissipation of heat out of the water column via convection and evaporation, or via dilution by

cool inflows.

5) Reported downstream temperature changes below forest clearings are highly variable. Some report streams cooled, some report streams continued to warm in the downstream direction.

6) Whether cooling occurs may depend on ambient air temperatures and hydrologic conditions within the downstream reach

7) To understand the mechanisms that allow cooling to occur requires more physical process-based research.

8) Three factors may mitigate against cumulative effects of stream warming. 1) dilution could mitigate temperatures to a biologically suitable level, 2) the effects of energy inputs are not linearly additive throughout a stream network due to systematic changes in balance of energy transfer mechanisms. 3) Intercepting environments (lakes, reservoirs).

9) There may be secondary impacts from forest management such as stream widening and shallowing that may occur with excess sedimentation that may change the heat exchange dynamics and influence water temperature.

# Monitoring and Predicting Stream Temperature and its Causal Factors

## *Monitoring Stream Temperature*

1) Most recent studies have used submersible temperature loggers to measure water temperature.

2) Forward-looking infrared radiometery from helicopters has been used to map the spatial distribution of temperature for investigating stream temperature patterns in medium to large streams. The application of this technology to small streams is limited. The method can identify cool water areas within larger rivers.

## *Measuring Shade*

1) To account for riparian vegetation effects on temperature, there must be a measure of the extent to which the overstream vegetation blocks energy exchange with the water in the stream. Some type of measurement of canopy density is important, because this is the primary mechanism by which forest management affects water temperature.
2) Shade, canopy cover, canopy density, and view-to-the-sky are often variously used to describe or infer the effect of the riparian vegetation on water temperature. These measures express canopy as a density or percent overhead cover. However, these measures are not synonymous and will give different results when comparing riparian canopy cover among studies.
3) The vertical and horizontal variation in canopy characteristics that influence energy exchange are complex depending on the canopy structure and are variable along a stream reach. All measures must ultimately reflect an average condition that represents the thermal reach.

4) There are not only many different ways to describe the blocking influence of riparian vegetation but also many methods and measurement tools to estimate it.

   A. Blocking of the stream's total view to the sky: (yields measure of % openness or its inverse blockage)
      --Ocular estimates of the hemispherical view-to-the-sky aided by spherical densiometer or fisheye lens photography

B. Focused measurement of the area of the sky view through which the sun passes (yields measure of blocking of direct solar radiation primarily)
–geometric calculations based on canopy and terrain angles
--Spherical densiometer-type instrument modified to view the solar pathway
C. Indirect methods
--Compare radiation or lights levels using photovoltaic light meter above under the canopy and in the open
-- Back calculate canopy cover factor in heat energy balance by comparing temperature in open and under canopy

5) To date, there has been only moderate success with using the more complex or indirect measures.

## *Predicting the Influences of Forest Harvesting on Stream Temperature*

1) Several authors have devised empirical models based on multiple regression from environmental variables to predict a selected temperature characteristic such as MWAT or MMWT. These types of models are simple with low requirements for input data, but they involve significant uncertainties, especially when applied to situations different from those represented in the calibration data. Nevertheless, several authors have developed locally relevant models that can usually predict maximum temperature within 2$^{o}$C with a regression coefficent ($R^2$) of 0.60 to 0.70)

2) The physics of heat transfer have been well studied, and a number of physically-based models incorporating energy balance concepts have been developed for application to individual stream reaches. These include the seminal model introduced by Brown (1969, 1985), TEMP-84 (Beschta and Wetherred, 1984), TEMPEST (Adams and Sullivan, 1989), Heat Source (Boyd 1996) and STREAMLINE (Rutherford et al. 1997)..

3) Physically-based models all work on the same physics principles but are constructed with with somewhat different assumptions, formulations, variables to inform, and complexity of environmental characterization.

4) There are also models to simulate stream temperatures at the stream network or catchment scale. These include SNTEMP (Mattax and Quigley, 1989), Bartholow (1991 and 2000), and a model based on the S=HSPF (Hydrological Simulation Program-FORTRAN) model developed by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency and the U.S. Geological Survey (Chen et al 1998a, b).

5) Sullivan et al (1990) tested the ability of four reach scale models (TEMP-86, TEMPEST, Brown's model, SSTEMP) and three catchment scale models (QUAL2E, SNTEMP, and MODEL-Y) to predict forest-related temperature increases in Washington. The reach models consistently (though not universally) achieved accurate temperature predictions (within 1-2$^{o}$C) in many different types of streams and rivers. This was despite significant variability in the data required by the models and methods of measurement, especially with regard to riparian canopy. Simple models with relatively few variables performed as well as those that parameterized the environmental characteristics that drive the heat transfer modes in great detail.

6) The catchment scale models required more input data than would generally be available for operational applications foreseen by the Washington study, and did not provide accurate predictions for mean, minimum, and maximum temperatures as tested.

## Discussion and Conclusions (From Moore et al. 2005)

### *Summary of Forest Harvesting Effects on Microclimate and Stream Temperature on Small Streams*

1) Forest harvesting can increase solar radiation in the riparian zone as well as wind speed and exposure to air advected from clearings, typically causing increases in summertime air, soil, and stream temperatures and decreases in relative humidity
2) Riparian buffers can help minimize these changes
3) Edge effects penetrating into a buffer generally decline rapidly within about one tree height into the forest under most circumstances
4) Solar radiation, soil temperature, and wind speed appear to adjust to forest conditions more rapidly than air temperature and relative humidity.
5) Clearcut harvesting can produce significant daytime increases in stream temperature during summer, driven primarily by the increased solar radiation associated with decreased canopy cover but also influenced by channel morphology and stream hydrology.
6) Winter temperature changes have not been as well documented but appear to be smaller in magnitude and sometimes opposite in direction in rain-dominated catchments.
7) Although retention of riparian vegetation can help protect against temperature changes, substantial warming has been observed in streams with both unthinned and partial retention buffers.

8) Comparing results has been hampered by inconsistency in temperature metrics used among studies.

9) Increases stream temperatures associated with forest harvesting appear to decline to pre-logging levels within five to ten years in many cases, though thermal recovery can take longer in others. There is mixed evidence for the efficacy of low, shrubby vegetation in promoting recovery.

10) Temperature increases in headwater streams are unlikely to produce substantial changes in the temperatures of larger streams into which they flow, unless the total inflow of clearcut heated tributaries constitutes a significant proportion of the total flow of the receiving streams.

11) Streams heated by canopy removal may or may not cool when they flow into shaded areas. Where downstream cooling does not occur rapidly, the spatial extent of the thermal impacts is effectively extended to lower reaches, which may be fish bearing. In addition, warming of headwater streams could reduce the local cooling effect where they flow into larger streams, thus diminishing the value of those cool water areas as thermal refugia.

## *Biological Consequences and Implication for Forest Practices*

1) It is difficult to estimate the biological consequences of harvesting related changes in riparian microclimate and stream temperature of small streams based on existing results.

2) In terms of terrestrial ecology in riparian zones, there is incomplete knowledge regarding the numbers of species that are unique to small streams and their riparian zones, as well as their population dynamics, sensitivity to microclimatic changes, and ability to recolonize disturbed habitat.

3) A better understanding is required of how changes in the physical conditions in small streams and their interactions with chemical and biological processes influence their downstream exports.

4) Based on the available studies, a one-tree-height buffer on each side of a stream should be reasonably effective in reducing harvesting impacts on both riparian microclimate and stream temperature.

5) Narrower buffers may provide at least partial protection, but their effectiveness may be compromised by windthrow. Alternative methods of designing buffers for protecting temperature in small streams may be explored.

## *Issues For Future Research (Moore et al. 2005*)

1) Riparian microclimates have been relatively little studied, both in general and specifically in relation to the effects of forest practices.

2) Shade is the dominant control on forestry-related stream warming in small streams.

3) Determining shade in small streams is difficult and refined and consistent methods are needed.

4) Hemispherical photography might be the way to go to solve subjectivity and methods problems.

5) The effects of low and deciduous vegetation in controlling temperature in very small streams is not well understood.

6) Further research should address the thermal implications of surface/subsurface hydrologic interactions, considering both local and reach scale effects of heat exchange associated with hyporheic flow paths.

7) Bed temperature patterns in small streams and their relation to stream temperature should be researched in relation the effects on benthic invertebrates and other aquatic species.

8) The hypothesis that warming of shallow ground water in clearcuts can contribute to stream warming should be addressed, ideally by a combination of experimental and process/modeling studies.

9) The physical basis for temperature changes downstream of clearings needs to be clarified. Are there diagnostic site factors that can predict reaches where cooling will occur? Such information could assist in the identification of thermal recovery reaches to limit the downstream propagation of stream warming. It could also help identify areas within a cut block where shade from a retention patch would have the greatest influence.

## Summary Points of the TAC Discussion of The Effects of Temperature on Salmonids and Watershed Temperature Patterns

### *The Physiological Basis for Salmonid Temperature Response*

1) Water temperature governs the basic physiological functions of salmonids and is an important habitat factor.
2) Fish have ranges of temperature wherein all of these functions operate normally contributing to their health and reproductive success. Outside of the range, these functions may be partially or fully impaired, manifesting in a variety of internal and externally visible symptoms. Salmon have a number of physiologic and behavioral mechanisms that enable them to resist adverse effects of temporary excursions into temperatures that are outside of their preferred or optimal range. However, high or low temperatures of sufficient magnitude, if exceeded for sufficient duration, can exceed their ability to adapt physiologically or behaviorally.
3) Salmon are adapted over some evolutionary time frame to the prevailing water temperatures in their natural range of occurrence, and climatic gradient are among the primary factors that determine the extent of a species' geographic distribution on the continent.
4) Salmon are considered a "cold water" species, and generally function best within the range of ambient temperatures in water bodies within their natural range of occurrence. This range is 0-30$^{o}$C for salmonids, where end temperatures are lethal and mid range temperatures are optimal. The southern limit of the natural range of salmonids coincides with the occurrence of summer water temperatures of 30$^{o}$C.
5) The effects of temperature are a function of magnitude and duration of exposure. Exposure to temperatures above 24$^{o}$C of sufficient continuous duration can cause mortality.
6) Salmon can tolerate each successively lower temperature for exponentially increasing intervals of time. Temperatures above 22$^{o}$C are stressful. Lengthy exposure to higher temperatures include loss of appetite and failure to gain weight, competitive pressure and displacement by other species better adapted to prevailing temperatures, or disease.
7) Growth occurs best when temperatures are moderate and food supplies are adequate. High and low temperatures limit growth. Optimal temperatures for growth are in the range of 14 to 17$^{o}$C, depending on species.

8) Salmon have been shown to increase in size in streams where riparian canopy was removed due to increased light and food availability, despite the occurrence of warmer temperatures.

9) Larger size generally increases survival and reproductive success.

10) Growth rates are important for anadromous salmonids, who must reach minimum sizes before they are able to migrate to the ocean. Missing normal migration windows by being too small or too large may have negative effects on success in reaching the ocean.

11) The temperature of rivers and streams ranges over the full range of temperatures within the range utilized by salmonids during the course of the year. The summer maximum temperatures are generally those of most concern.

12) The most thermally tolerant salmonid species that occur in California (steelhead, chinook and coho). Of these species, coho are the most thermally sensitive.

### *Temperature Exposure in Natural Streams and Potential Effects of Forest Practices*

1) Water temperature generally tends to increase in the downstream direction with stream size as a result of systematic changes in the important environmental variables that control water temperature. As streams widen, riparian canopy provides less and shade until some point in a river system where it provides no significant blocking effect. Cooler groundwater inflow also diminishes in proportion to the volume of flow in larger streams.

2) The lowest order streams have the coolest water temperatures near groundwater temperature (11-14$^{o}$C). Higher order streams are near ambient air temperatures (20-26$^{o}$C). The range of water temperature from lower to higher orders in California rivers and streams during the warmest period in the summer spans much of the tolerable temperature range for salmonids. Water temperature typical of higher order streams are within stressful levels for salmonids.

3) Removal of riparian vegetation may increase stream temperatures up to the ambient air temperature, depending on the natural extent of shading and the proportion of canopy removed. Thus, temperatures typically observed only in downstream reaches may occur in tributary streams.

4) Salmonid distribution within stream systems and within the region

reflects temperature tolerance.  Coho are found in the cooler waters associated with headwater streams and within the coastal zone where climate is strongly influenced by the Pacific Ocean.  Steelhead have somewhat higher thermal tolerance, and are more widely distributed.

# Copy of Journal Article by Moore, R. D, D.L. Spittlehouse, and A. Story (2005)

***Article***

JOURNAL OF THE AMERICAN WATER RESOURCES ASSOCIATION
AUGUST AMERICAN WATER RESOURCES ASSOCIATION 2005

# RIPARIAN MICROCLIMATE AND STREAM TEMPERATURE RESPONSE TO FOREST HARVESTING: A REVIEW[1]

*R. Dan Moore, D. L. Spittlehouse, and Anthony Story*[2]

ABSTRACT: Forest harvesting can increase solar radiation in the riparian zone as well as wind speed and exposure to air advected from clearings, typically causing increases in summertime air, soil, and stream temperatures and decreases in relative humidity. Stream temperature increases following forest harvesting are primarily controlled by changes in insolation but also depend on stream hydrology and channel morphology. Stream temperatures recovered to pre-harvest levels within 10 years in many studies but took longer in others. Leaving riparian buffers can decrease the magnitude of stream temperature increases and changes to riparian microclimate, but substantial warming has been observed for streams within both unthinned and partial retention buffers. A range of studies has demonstrated that streams may or may not cool after flowing from clearings into shaded environments, and further research is required in relation to the factors controlling downstream cooling. Further research is also required on riparian microclimate and its responses to harvesting, the influences of surface/subsurface water exchange on stream and bed temperature regimes, biological implications of temperature changes in headwater streams (both on site and downstream), and methods for quantifying shade and its influence on radiation inputs to streams and riparian zones.
(KEY TERMS: stream temperature; forestry; headwater; riparian; microclimate; water quality; watershed management; Pacific Northwest.)

Moore, R. Dan, D. L. Spittlehouse, and Anthony Story, 2005. Riparian Microclimate and Stream Temperature Response to Forest Harvesting: A Review. Journal of the American Water Resources Association (JAWRA) 41(4):813-834.

## INTRODUCTION

Riparian microclimate and stream temperature are critical factors in relation to habitat conditions in and near streams and are governed by the interactions of energy and water exchanges within the riparian zone. Riparian microclimate sets the boundary conditions for many of the energy exchanges that influence stream temperature, while stream temperature sets one of the boundary conditions for riparian microclimate. The two topics are therefore closely linked and are covered together in this paper, which focuses on research relevant to two concerns: (1) forest harvesting may change riparian microclimate and have an impact on aquatic and terrestrial habitat; and (2) forest harvesting, particularly with removal of riparian vegetation, may result in stream heating or other changes in water temperature that could have deleterious effects on aquatic organisms.

Despite decades of research on stream temperature response to forest harvesting, there are still vigorous debates in the Pacific Northwest about the thermal impacts of forestry and how to manage them (e.g., Larson and Larson, 1996; Beschta, 1997; Ice *et al.*, 2004; Johnson, 2004). The conventional approach to minimizing the effects of forest harvesting on streams and their riparian zones is to retain a forested buffer strip along the stream. Most jurisdictions in the Pacific Northwest require buffer strips to be left along larger (usually fish bearing) streams (Young, 2000). However, less protection is afforded to smaller, non-fish-bearing streams. For example, in British Columbia, buffer strips are not required along non-fish bearing streams unless they are a designated community water supply, and buffer strips are not mandatory along the fish bearing streams whose

[1]Paper No. 04066 of the *Journal of the American Water Resources Association* (JAWRA) (Copyright © 2005). Discussions are open until February 1, 2006.

[2]Respectively, Associate Professor, Department of Geography and Department of Forest Resources Management, 1984 West Mall, University of British Columbia, Vancouver, B.C., Canada V6T 1Z2; Research Climatologist, B.C. Ministry of Forests, Research Branch, P.O. Box 9519, Station Provincial Government, Victoria, B.C., Canada V8W 9C2; and Graduate Student, University of Toronto, Institute for the History and Philosophy of Science and Technology, Room 316, Victoria College, 91 Charles Street West, Toronto, Ontario, Canada M5S 1K7 (E-Mail: rdmoore@geog.ubc.ca).

bankfull width is less than 1.5 m. Thus, small streams are potentially subject to significant changes in riparian microclimate and particularly to increased solar radiation, which is the major factor driving summertime stream warming.

Beschta *et al.*, (1987) presented an excellent review of the physical and biological aspects of stream temperature in a forestry context, but more recent research has expanded the geographic scope of knowledge within the Pacific Northwest (PNW) region, shed new light on governing processes, or made advances in relation to tools for monitoring and prediction. In the interests of completeness, this paper will revisit much of the material reviewed by Beschta *et al.* (1987) in addition to reviewing more recent studies but will focus on physical aspects. It is assumed that the reader has a basic grounding in microclimatological principles and terminology. Readers lacking this background are referred to Oke (1987) for an excellent introductory treatment.

Given that the primary concern is with riparian management around small streams, the review focuses as much as possible on studies in catchments less than 100 ha in area or streams less than 2 to 3 m wide. It also focuses on studies in the Pacific Northwest region, broadly defined to include northern California, Oregon, Washington, British Columbia, and southeastern Alaska. However, studies from outside the PNW region were considered if they provided useful insights that were not available from local studies. Similarly, studies that did not focus specifically on small forest streams were included if the results were relevant to small stream thermal regimes.

## RIPARIAN MICROCLIMATE

### *Characteristics of Forest Microclimates*

Microclimate below forest canopies has been studied extensively for decades, though usually without explicit attention to riparian zones (FAO, 1962; Reifsnyder and Lull, 1965; Jarvis *et al.*, 1976; Rauner, 1976; Geiger *et al.*, 1995; McCaughey *et al.*, 1997; Chen *et al.*, 1999). Compared to open environments, the canopy reduces solar radiation, precipitation, and wind speed near ground level and increases longwave radiation received at the surface. These changes in turn influence the thermal and moisture environments under forest canopies.

Solar radiation transmission through forest canopies depends on the heights of the crown and the density and arrangement of foliage elements (Vézina and Petch, 1964; Reifsnyder and Lull, 1965; Federer, 1971; Black *et al.*, 1991). Reductions in solar radiation under forest cover range from more than 90 percent with dense canopies (Young and Mitchell, 1994; Chen *et al.*, 1995; Brosofske *et al.*, 1997; Davies-Colley *et al.*, 2000) to less than 75 percent in open stands (Örlander and Langvall, 1993; Spittlehouse *et al.*, 2004). The forest canopy changes the spectral distribution of light because plant foliage differentially absorbs and reflects the various wavelengths (Federer and Tanner, 1966; Vézina and Boulter, 1966; Atzet and Waring, 1970; Yang *et al.*, 1993). There is a greater reduction in the ultraviolet and photosynthetically active radiation ranges compared to longer solar radiation wavelengths. Longwave radiation to the forest floor increases as the canopy density increases because the forest canopy is usually warmer than the sky being blocked and has a higher emissivity (Reifsnyder and Lull, 1965). Although this increase somewhat offsets the reduction in solar radiation below the forest canopy, daytime net radiation below forest canopies is usually substantially lower than that in the open.

The amount of precipitation intercepted by the canopy and lost by evaporation depends upon tree species and the amount of canopy cover and typically varies from 10 to 30 percent of annual precipitation (Calder, 1990; McCaughey *et al.*, 1997; Pomeroy and Goodison, 1997; Spittlehouse, 1998). The fraction of precipitation intercepted decreases as storm magnitude and intensity increase. Time since the previous storm and weather conditions during the current storm are also important.

Wind speed under forest canopies is usually 10 to 20 percent of that in large openings (Raynor, 1971; Chen *et al.*, 1995; Davies-Colley *et al.*, 2000). Wind speed within forest openings depends on their size, and openings of less than about 0.1 ha will have low wind speeds, similar to those in the forest (Spittlehouse *et al.*, 2004).

Forest canopies tend to reduce the diurnal air temperature range compared to large open areas. Maximum differences (open area minus area under forest canopy) in daytime air temperature at the 1.5 to 2 m height varied from 3°C (Brosofske *et al.*, 1997; Davies-Colley *et al.*, 2000; Spittlehouse *et al.*, 2004) to 6°C or more (Young and Mitchell, 1994; Chen *et al.*, 1995; Cadenasso *et al.*, 1997). At night, air temperatures in forest areas are typically about 1°C higher than in the open (Chen *et al.*, 1995; Spittlehouse *et al.*, 2004), though Brosofske *et al.* (1997) found temperatures about 1°C lower above a stream. Surface and near-surface soil temperatures show the largest differences between forest and open sites, being up to 10 to 15°C lower under forest canopies during the daytime and

1 to 2°C higher at night (Chen *et al.*, 1995; Brosofske *et al.*, 1997; Spittlehouse *et al.*, 2004).

The vapor pressure of the air is mainly a function of the surrounding air mass and will be similar in the open and the forest. Consequently, the relative humidity and vapor pressure deficit will depend on the air temperature. The lower daytime forest air temperature means that relative humidity is typically 5 to 25 percent higher in the forest (Chen *et al.*, 1995; Brosofske *et al.*, 1997; Davies-Colley *et al.*, 2000; Spittlehouse *et al.*, 2004).

Riparian zones typically have elevated water tables and higher soil moisture than adjacent upland areas. Partly due to these hydrologic conditions, riparian forest cover and understory vegetation often differ from those of uplands, which would influence penetration of solar radiation and interception loss of precipitation. Surrounding slopes may also block direct and diffuse solar radiation. In small headwater streams, the riparian zone may be narrow to nonexistent due to topographic constraints imposed by steep side slopes (Richardson *et al.*, 2005). In addition to the effects of distinctive forest cover and higher soil moisture, riparian microclimate may be influenced by the stream channel, which can provide a local source of water vapor and act as a heat sink during the day, producing locally cooler and moister conditions near the stream (Brosofske *et al.*, 1997; Danehy and Kirpes, 2000). Riparian vegetation may also serve as a source of water vapor via transpiration (Danehy and Kirpes, 2000). Danehy and Kirpes (2000) found that enhanced relative humidity was restricted to a narrow zone within 10 m of the stream edge at 12 forested sites in eastern Oregon and Washington, most likely due to the constraining effects of steep local topography. Another topographic influence that is particularly important in mountain regions is the development of drainage winds that flow down valleys and gullies (Oke, 1987), advecting cool air into lower reaches.

### *Edge Effects and the Microclimate of Riparian Buffers*

The magnitude of harvesting related changes in riparian microclimate will depend on the width of riparian buffers and how far edge effects extend into the buffer. Studies by Chen *et al.* (1993a,b, 1995) in an old-growth Douglas fir forest in Washington state (tree heights 50 to 65 m) are commonly cited in relation to edge effects and required buffer widths. Their results are consistent with those of Ledwith (1996), Brosofske *et al.* (1997), and Hagan and Whitman (2000), as well as with a range of other studies including Raynor (1971) (10.5 m tall red and white pine, closed canopy, New York state), Örlander and Langvall (1993) (22 to 25 m tall Norway spruce and Scots pine stands of varying density, Sweden), Young and Mitchell (1994) (mixed podocarp-broadleaf forest in New Zealand), Cadenasso *et al.* (1997) (60+-year-old oak, birch, beech, and maple forest in New York state), Davies-Colley *et al.* (2000) (mature, 20 m tall native broadleaved rainforest in New Zealand), and Spittlehouse *et al.* (2004) (25 to 30 m tall Engelmann spruce-subalpine fir forest with a 40 percent canopy cover in British Columbia). All of these studies show that much of the change in microclimate takes place within about one tree height (15 to 60 m) of the edge. Solar radiation, wind speed, and soil temperature adjust to interior forest conditions more rapidly than do air temperature and relative humidity. Nighttime edge temperatures are similar to interior forest conditions. Daytime relative humidity decreases from interior to edge in response to the increased air temperature.

Edge orientation can be important, particularly for a south-facing edge (in the northern hemisphere), where solar radiation can penetrate some distance into the forest for much of the day. Dignan and Bren (2003) found that light penetration diminished rapidly within 10 to 30 m of the buffer edge for a riparian mountain ash forest in Australia, but that light penetration at 10 m was significantly greater for buffers that faced the equator than for other orientations. Wind blowing directly into the edge penetrates farther into the forest than from other directions (Raynor, 1971; Davies-Colley *et al.*, 2000).

Few studies appear to have examined microclimatic conditions within riparian buffers. In a study in northern California, above stream air temperatures measured in the early afternoon decreased with increasing buffer width, at decreases of about 1.6°C per 10 m for buffer widths up to 30 m and 0.2°C per 10 m for buffer widths from 30 m to 150 m (Ledwith, 1996). Above stream temperatures in the 150 m wide buffer treatments were about 6°C lower than at the no-buffer sites. In the same study, relative humidity was 10 to 15 percent higher than at a clear-cut site for 30 m wide buffers and increased another 5 to 10 percent as buffer widths increased to 150 m. At a study conducted at a first-order stream in Maine (Hagan and Whitman, 2000) where a 23 m wide buffer had been left on each side, air temperature 10 m from the stream in the buffer exhibited local differences from the reference sites of up to about 2°C. Differences up to about 4°C were observed within about 10 m from the buffer edge.

Only one study, covering 15 small streams in western Washington, appears to have examined changes in riparian microclimate using both pre-harvest and post-harvest data (Brosofske *et al.*, 1997). Prior to harvest, gradients from the stream into upland areas existed for all variables except solar radiation and wind speed. After harvest, conditions at the edges of riparian buffers tended to approximate those in the interior of the clear-cut. Solar radiation increased substantially within the buffers relative to pre-harvest conditions. Soil surface temperatures were higher after harvest. For buffers less than about 45 m wide (about one tree height), the pre-harvest gradient from riparian zone to upland was interrupted, which could influence habitat conditions for riparian fauna.

## THERMAL PROCESSES AND HEADWATER STREAM TEMPERATURE

An understanding of thermal processes is required as a basis for understanding stream temperature dynamics, in particular for interpreting and generalizing from experimental studies of forestry influences. As a parcel of water flows through a stream reach, its temperature will change as a function of energy and water exchanges across the water surface and the streambed and banks (Figure 1) as described by the following equation (modified from Polehn and Kinsel, 2000).

$$\frac{dT_w}{dx} = \frac{\Sigma Q}{\rho C_p v D} + \frac{F_{gw}}{F}\left(T_{gw} - T_w\right) + \frac{F_{hyp}}{F}\left(T_{hyp} - T_w\right) \quad (1)$$

where $dT_w/dx$ is the rate of change in the temperature (°C) of the water parcel with distance, x(m), as it flows downstream; $\Sigma Q$ is the net heat exchange by radiation, turbulent exchange, and conduction across the water surface and bed (W/m$^2$); F is the streamflow (m$^3$/s); $F_{gw}$ is the ground water inflow rate (m$^3$/s/m); $F_{hyp}$ is the hyporheic exchange rate (m$^3$/s/m); $T_{gw}$ and $T_{hyp}$ are the ground water and hyporheic water temperatures, respectively (°C); $\rho$ is the water density (kg/m$^3$); $C_p$ is the specific heat of water (J/kg/°C); v is the local mean velocity (m/s); and D is the local mean depth (m). Equation (1) assumes steady state flow and ignores longitudinal dispersion. It also ignores the heat input of precipitation, which is typically much less than 1 percent of the total energy input to a stream (Webb and Zhang, 1997; Evans *et al.*, 1998). Similarly, frictional heating is neglected because it can be shown to be important relative to other energy exchanges only for steep streams with relatively high flows, under low radiation conditions. This section provides an overview of the dominant processes represented in Equation (1), followed by a discussion of spatial and temporal dynamics of stream temperature regimes.

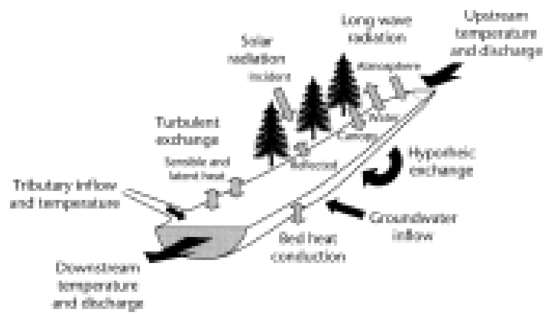



Figure 1. Factors Controlling Stream Temperature. Energy fluxes associated with water exchanges are shown as black arrows.

### *Radiative Exchanges*

Radiation inputs to a stream surface include incoming solar radiation (direct and diffuse) and longwave radiation emitted by the atmosphere, forest canopy, and topography. Canopy cover along the sun's path will reduce the direct component of solar radiation, some of which will be scattered and transmitted through the canopy as diffuse radiation. Transmission of diffuse solar radiation will depend on both the spatial pattern of diffuse radiance from the sky dome and its interactions with the spatial arrangement of canopy elements. The details of solar radiation transmission through canopies are complex. It is often represented by simplified models based on extinction coefficients (e.g., Black *et al.*, 1991; Sridhar *et al.*, 2004) or the spatial distribution of canopy gaps (e.g., Dignan and Bren, 2003). Channel morphology can also influence incident solar radiation at a stream surface. Narrow, incised channels can be effectively shaded by streambanks (Pluhowski, 1972; Webb and Zhang, 1997). Wide channels tend to be less shaded because they have a canopy gap overhead, which will be particularly important for streams oriented north-south.

For solar elevation angles greater than 30 degrees, less than 10 percent of incoming solar radiation will be reflected from the water surface (Oke, 1987). Most incoming solar radiation thus enters the water column, where absorption can occur within the water column and at the bed (Evans *et al.*, 1998). The net effect is that roughly 90 to 95 percent of incident solar radiation is absorbed in the water column or at the bed and thus potentially available for stream heating, except at low solar elevation angles (Evans *et al.*, 1998; Johnson, 2004).

Incoming longwave radiation will be a weighted sum of the emitted radiation from the atmosphere, surrounding terrain, and the canopy, with the weights being their respective view factors (Rutherford *et al.*, 1997). The water surface, canopy, and terrain have high emissivities (typically ≥ 0.95) (Oke, 1987), while the atmospheric emissivity is normally lower, except under overcast conditions. Outgoing longwave radiation includes that emitted by the water surface plus a small fraction (typically 3 to 5 percent) of the incoming longwave radiation that is reflected (Oke, 1987).

Peak daytime net radiation over a stream within a clear-cut can be more than five times greater than that under a forest canopy during summer (Brown, 1969), primarily due to the increase in incident solar radiation. Longwave radiation losses at night may be reduced slightly under forest canopy (Brown, 1969). It has been suggested that longwave radiation losses during autumn and winter may increase following removal (harvest) of forest canopy, leading to more rapid seasonal cooling (e.g., Macdonald *et al.*, 2003b), but this does not appear to have been investigated.

*Sensible and Latent Heat Exchanges*

Transfers of sensible and latent heat occur by conduction or diffusion and turbulent exchange in the overlying air. Sensible heat exchange depends on the temperature difference between the water surface and overlying air and on the wind speed. Where the stream is warmer than the air, heat transfer away from the stream would be promoted by the unstable temperature stratification, which enhances turbulence. Where the stream is cooler, heat transfer from the air to the stream would be dampened by the stable air temperature stratification (Oke, 1987). Evaporation and associated energy loss occur where the vapor pressure at the water surface (equal to the "saturation" value for the water temperature) exceeds the vapor pressure in the overlying air (a function of the air temperature and relative humidity); condensation and associated energy gain occur where the vapor pressure of the air exceeds the vapor pressure at the water surface. Latent heat exchange also depends on atmospheric stability over the stream.

Most field and modeling studies have used empirical "wind functions" to compute sensible and latent heat fluxes over small streams (e.g., Brown, 1969; Rutherford *et al.*, 1997; Webb and Zhang, 1997; Evans *et al.*, 1998; Johnson, 2004; Moore *et al.*, 2005). There can be great uncertainty in fluxes computed from wind functions, particularly because mean wind speeds under canopies may be less than the stall speed of typical anemometers (Story *et al.*, 2003).

Under intact forest cover, lack of ventilation appears to limit the absolute magnitude of sensible and latent heat exchanges over small streams (Brown, 1969; Webb and Zhang, 1997; Story *et al.*, 2003). Even at open sites such as clear-cuts, sensible and latent heat fluxes over small streams may be limited by bank sheltering, particularly for narrow, incised channels (Gulliver and Stefan, 1986). Brown (1969) and Moore *et al.* (2005) estimated the sensible and latent heat exchanges to be an order of magnitude lower than net radiation on sunny days in recent clear-cuts at coastal sites. Johnson (2004) computed higher values for latent heat flux at a stream in a recovering clear-cut in the Oregon Cascades, though it was still an order of magnitude lower than incident solar radiation.

*Bed Heat Exchanges and Thermal Regime of the Streambed*

Radiative energy absorbed at the streambed may be transferred to the water column by conduction and turbulent exchange and into the bed sediments directly by conduction and indirectly by advection (in locations where water infiltrates the bed). Given that turbulent exchange is more effective at transferring heat than conduction and that the flowing portions of streams are fully turbulent, much of the energy absorbed at the bed is transferred into the water column, and the temperature at the surface of the bed will generally be close to the temperature of the water column (Sinokrot and Stefan, 1993), except perhaps in pools with upwelling ground water or hyporheic exchange flow.

Bed heat conduction depends on the temperature gradients within the bed and its thermal conductivity and will normally act as a cooling influence on summer days and a warming influence at night, thus tending to reduce diurnal temperature range (Brown, 1985; Moore *et al.*, 2005). For streams within clear-cuts on sunny days, it has been estimated to be approximately 10 percent of net radiation in a step-pool stream (Moore *et al.*, 2005) and up to 25 percent in a bedrock channel (Brown, 1969). Bed heat conduction should depend on stream-subsurface interactions: stream reaches with upwelling ground water tend to have stronger daytime bed temperature gradients than those without and thus should have higher heat loss by conduction (Silliman and Booth, 1993; Story *et al.*, 2003).

Temperatures within the streambed are significant in their own right, since they may influence conditions for post-spawning egg development and fry emergence, as well as conditions for benthic invertebrates. Ringler and Hall (1975) observed summer bed temperature gradients in three catchments in the Oregon Coast Range. Gradients in an unlogged catchment were negligible. Differences of 2°C between the bed surface and 50 cm depth were observed in the streambed of a catchment subject to 25 percent patch-cut with riparian buffers, while bed temperatures in artificial redds in a fully clear-cut catchment reached 21°C with diurnal variations of up to 7°C at 25 cm depth and vertical changes of about 8°C over 50 cm. Bed temperatures varied greatly among locations within the clear-cut, likely due to variations in surface water exchange across the bed (Ringler and Hall, 1975). Consistent with this inference, Moore *et al.* (2005) found that bed temperatures in a step pool unit within a clear-cut followed stream temperature more closely in areas of downwelling flow into the bed than in areas of upwelling flow. Given the documented influence of subsurface hydrology on bed temperatures in a range of stream sizes and types and the potential interactions between stream temperature and stream subsurface exchanges (e.g., Shepherd *et al.*, 1986; White *et al.*, 1987; Silliman and Booth, 1993; Constantz, 1998; Curry *et al.*, 2002; Malcolm *et al.*, 2002; Alexander and Caissie, 2003; Moore *et al.*, 2005), the degree to which post-logging bed temperatures reflect changes in surface temperature likely depends on the local hydrologic environment.

### *Ground Water Inflow*

Ground water is typically cooler than stream water in summer during daytime and warmer during winter and thus acts to moderate seasonal and diurnal stream temperature variations (Webb and Zhang, 1999; Bogan *et al.*, 2003). Forest harvesting can increase soil moisture and ground water levels due to decreased interception losses and transpiration (Hetherington, 1987; Adams *et al.*, 1991). Increases in ground water levels following forest harvesting could act to promote cooling or at least ameliorate warming. Alternatively, several authors have speculated that warming of shallow ground water in clear-cuts could result in heat advection to a stream, exacerbating the effects of increased solar radiation or decreasing the effectiveness of riparian buffers (e.g., Hewlett and Fortson, 1982; Hartman and Scrivener, 1990; Brosofske *et al.*, 1997; Bourque and Pomeroy, 2001), and this process has been incorporated into a catchment scale model of hydrology and water quality (St.-Hilaire *et al.*, 2000). Although there is ongoing research on the thermal response of ground water to forest harvesting (Alexander *et al.*, 2003), no published research appears to have examined ground water discharge and temperature both before and after harvest as a direct test of the ground water warming hypothesis.

### *Hyporheic Exchange*

Hyporheic exchange is a two-way transfer of water between a stream and the saturated sediments in the bed and riparian zone. It often occurs where a stream meanders or where there are marked changes in stream gradient. For example, stream water typically flows into the bed at the top of a riffle and re-emerges at the bottom of the riffle (Harvey and Bencala, 1993). If the temperature of hyporheic water discharging into a stream differs from stream temperature, then hyporheic exchange can influence stream temperature dynamics (Equation 1). Several studies have shown that hyporheic exchange creates local thermal heterogeneity in larger streams (e.g., Bilby, 1984; Malard *et al.*, 2002), and recent studies suggest that it can be important in relation to both local and reach scale temperature patterns in headwater streams (Johnson, 2004; Moore *et al.*, 2005). However, there are significant methodological challenges associated with quantifying rates of hyporheic exchange and its influence on stream temperature (Kasahara and Wondzell, 2003; Story *et al.*, 2003; Moore *et al.*, 2005).

### *Tributary Inflow*

Effects of tributary inflow depend on the temperature difference between inflow and stream temperatures and on the relative contribution to discharge, according to a simple mixing equation.

$$T_m = f_i T_i + (1 - f_i) T_u = T_u + f_i (T_i - T_u) \qquad (2)$$

where $T_i$ is the inflow temperature (°C); $T_u$ is temperature at the upstream end of the reach (°C); $T_m$ is the temperature of the stream inflow mixture (°C); and $f_i$ is the ratio of inflow rate to streamflow at the downstream end of the reach. Equation (2) assumes complete mixing and may not be valid in the immediate vicinity and some distance downstream of the tributary mouth, where lateral mixing of the tributary flow with the main stream may be incomplete.

### *Longitudinal Dispersion and Effects of Pools*

Longitudinal dispersion results from the variation in velocity through the cross-section of a stream. It would act to "smooth" temperature waves as they propagate downstream, potentially causing a progressive decrease in the diurnal temperature maximum as clearing heated water flows downstream through forested reaches. It is often assumed to be negligible in modeling studies of both small and large streams (e.g., Sinokrot and Stefan, 1993; Rutherford *et al.*, 1997; Polehn and Kinsel, 2000), but no published studies appear to have evaluated its influence in small streams.

The presence of pools can also potentially influence stream temperatures. Being locally deeper zones, pools would tend to change temperature more slowly than the shallower, flowing portions of the stream. However, Brown (1972) observed that there was incomplete mixing in many pools in pool riffle streams in Oregon such that the effective width and depth of flowing water through pools were much smaller than the pool dimensions. Thermal influences of pools do not appear to have been examined in smaller, steeper step pool streams.

### *Equilibrium Temperature and Adjustment to Changes in Thermal Environment*

For a given set of boundary conditions (e.g., solar radiation, air temperature, humidity, wind speed), there will be an "equilibrium" water temperature that will produce a net energy exchange of zero and thus no further change in temperature as water flows downstream (i.e., $dT_w/dx = 0$; Edinger *et al.*, 1968). For stream water being warmed as it flows through a clear-cut, the equilibrium temperature represents the maximum possible temperature the parcel could achieve within the reach at a given time, assuming that boundary conditions remain constant in time and space. However, equilibrium temperature may not be achieved because the boundary conditions may change in time or space before the water parcel can adjust fully to the thermal environment. The concept applies most simply to streams or time scales for which the energy exchanges across the air/water interface dominate the energy budget (Edinger *et al.*, 1968). Stream temperatures influenced by substantial ground water inputs will be consistently less than equilibrium temperature computed from atmospheric conditions during summer and higher in winter (Bogan *et al.*, 2003). Equilibrium temperatures for unshaded reaches are higher than those under shade during summer afternoons (Bartholow, 2000; Bogan *et al.*, 2003).

The rate at which a parcel of water adjusts to a change in the thermal environment depends on stream depth because for deeper streams, heat would be added to or drawn from a greater volume of water. Shallow streams should thus adjust relatively quickly to a change in thermal environment. In addition, flow velocity influences the length of time the parcel of water is exposed to energy exchanges across the water surface and the bed and thus the extent to which the parcel can adjust fully to its thermal environment within a given reach (Figure 2). Given that the depth and velocity of a stream tend to increase with discharge, the sensitivity of stream temperature to a given set of energy inputs should increase as discharge decreases (Brown, 1985; Beschta *et al.*, 1987; Moore *et al.*, 2005).

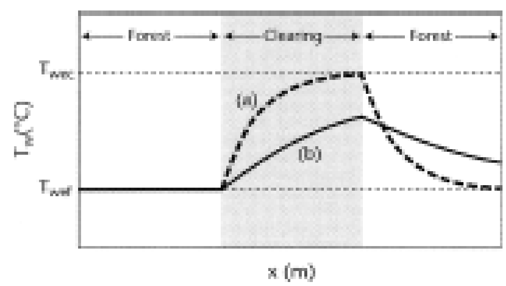



Figure 2. Schematic Temperature Patterns Along a Stream Flowing From Intact Forest, Through a Clear-Cut, and Back Under Intact Forest for (a) Shallow, Low Velocity, and (b) Deep, High Velocity Conditions ($T_{wef}$ = equilibrium temperature in forest; $T_{wec}$ = equilibrium temperature in clearing).

### *Thermal Trends and Heterogeneity Within Stream Networks*

Small forest streams tend to be colder and exhibit less diurnal variability than larger downstream reaches, up to about fourth or fifth order (Vannote and Sweeney, 1980; Holtby and Newcombe, 1982; Macdonald *et al.*, 2003a). Small streams will be more heavily shaded by riparian vegetation and near stream terrain, will have a higher ratio of ground water inflow in a reach to the total downstream flow, and are located at higher elevations and thus experience a generally cooler thermal environment. However, local deviations from a dominant downstream warming trend may occur as a result of ground water inflow, hyporheic exchange, or thermal contrasts between isolated pools and the flowing portion of a stream. In addition, lakes, ponds, and wetlands can produce elevated water temperatures at their outlets, resulting in downstream cooling below them over distances of hundreds of meters, even through cut blocks (Mellina *et al.*, 2002).

Thermal heterogeneity at a range of spatial scales has been well documented in intermediate and large streams (i.e., third order and larger; Bilby, 1984; Arscott *et al.*, 2001; Malard *et al.*, 2001; Ebersole *et al.*, 2003), where it is an important aspect of stream habitat (Neilsen *et al.*, 1994; Ebersole *et al.*, 2003). Thermal heterogeneity in small streams has apparently received less attention, though Story *et al.* (2003) and Moore *et al.* (2005) observed substantial temperature variations in small streams for reaches within a clear-cut and downstream of forest clearings, both along the reach and within channel units.

Stratification of pools can be an ecologically important source of thermal heterogeneity, although its occurrence is variable. Brown (1972) found that only one pool in an intermediate-sized stream with a pool-riffle morphology exhibited significant vertical stratification, with a temperature decrease of 6.5°C over 1.2 m depth. Nielsen *et al.* (1994) observed more prevalent thermal stratification in pools in three larger rivers in northern California and noted their significance as thermal refugia for steelhead. No published studies appear to have examined stratification of pools in smaller, steeper streams.

## STREAM TEMPERATURE RESPONSE TO FOREST MANAGEMENT

The effects of forest management on stream temperature have been estimated using a variety of study designs. The most rigorous approach is the BACI (before-after/control-impact) design, which involves monitoring both before and after treatment and includes untreated control sites (e.g., Harris, 1977). A variation is to use a regression of stream temperature on weather data in place of a calibration with a control catchment (e.g., Holtby and Newcombe, 1982; Curry *et al.*, 2002). Some studies used synoptic surveys of streams that had been subjected to a range of treatments (e.g., Rashin and Graber, 1992; Mellina *et al.*, 2002), while others monitored downstream temperature changes in clear-cuts (Brownlee *et al.*, 1988). This review focuses primarily on studies employing a BACI design, which are summarized in Table 1.

### *Influences of Forest Harvesting Without Riparian Buffers*

Almost all study streams in rain-dominated catchments experienced post-harvest increases in summer temperatures, with increases in summer maximum temperatures ranging up to 13°C (Table 1). The strong response at Needle Branch may reflect the harsh treatment: clear-cutting to the streambank, slash burning, and removal of wood from the stream. The difference in response between Needle Branch and H.J. Andrews (HJA) Watershed 1, which was subjected to similar treatment, may reflect the differences in aspects (i.e., south for Needle Branch versus northwest for HJA Watershed 1), but other factors also could have influenced the responses. At HJA Watershed 3, where streamside harvesting influenced only part of the stream length, a debris torrent removed riparian vegetation and scoured the channel to bedrock, ultimately leading to similar temperature increases as observed in HJA Watershed 1. At HJA Watersheds 1 and 3, the timing of summer maximum temperatures shifted from August for predisturbance conditions into late June and early July after disturbance, probably because inputs of solar radiation came to dominate other factors such as seasonal variations in discharge (Johnson and Jones, 2000).

In contrast to the results summarized in Table 1, Jackson *et al.* (2001) found that daily maximum temperature for four of seven study streams within clear-cuts in the Washington Coast Range either did not change significantly or decreased following harvesting, likely due to the large volumes of slash that covered the streams and provided shade. However, the post-harvest summer was substantially cooler than the pre-harvest summer, possibly confounding the results.

Effects on summer minimum daily temperatures do not appear to be as marked as those on maximum temperatures, with both small increases and decreases (on the order of 1 to 2°C) having been reported (e.g., Feller, 1981; Johnson and Jones, 2000). Summer daily temperature ranges after logging have increased up to about 7 to 8°C, compared to pre-logging ranges of about 1 to 3°C (Feller, 1981; Johnson and Jones, 2000). Carnation Creek and one of its tributaries experienced smaller increases in diurnal temperature range than found in other studies, but the reason is not obvious from available information (Holtby and Newcombe, 1982).

Fewer studies have examined stream temperature response to forest harvesting in snowmelt-dominated regimes, and no published studies employed a BACI design to estimate effects of no-buffer harvesting in these environments. Brownlee *et al.* (1988) measured downstream increases in summertime mean daily temperature of 1 to 3°C in three small streams flowing through clear-cuts in the central interior of British Columbia (BC), with increases in daily maximum temperatures of 4.5 to 9°C on the warmest days. Assuming that downstream temperature changes in these reaches were modest under pre-logging conditions, these upstream/downstream comparisons

TABLE 1. Summary of Experiments Documenting Stream Temperature Changes for Forest Harvesting.

| Study Location | Latitude (°N) | Treatment Catchment | Harvesting Type[1] | Riparian Buffer | Aspect | Temperature Variable | Observed Value After Treatment (°C) | Change Due to Treatment (observed-predicted) (°C) | Recovery to Pre-Treatment Conditions | Reference |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| RAIN DOMINATED | | | | | | | | | | |
| Oregon Coast Range (Alsea Watershed) | 45 | Needle Branch Creek (71 ha) | CC (100%) | no buffer | S | Mean of monthly max. T (Apr.-Oct.) | 17.5 | 5.5 | ~70% recovery in 7 years | Harris, 1977 |
| | | | | | | Maximum summer T | 26 | 11.6 | ~70% recovery in 7 years | |
| Oregon Coast Range (Alsea Watershed) | 45 | Deer Creek (304 ha) | PC (25%) | 30 m | S | Mean of monthly max. T (Apr.-Oct.) | 14.5 | 2.0 | No obvious recovery over 7 years | Harris, 1977 |
| British Columbia, Southern Coast Mountains | 49 | A[2] (59 ha) | CC (20%) | no buffer | SSW | Maximum difference between observed and predicted for daily max. T | | 5.0 | No obvious recovery in 4 years | Moore et al., 2005 |
| British Columbia, Southern Coast Mountains | 49 | A[2] (23.1 ha) | CC (61%) | no buffer | S | Maximum recorded T | 21.8 | 3.9[3] | Apparently full recovery after 6-7 years | Feller, 1981 |
| British Columbia, Southern Coast Mountains | 49 | B (68 ha) | CC (19%) followed by slash burn | no buffer | S | Maximum recorded T | 20.3 | 1.8[3] | No apparent recovery after 7 years | Feller, 1981 |
| Oregon Cascades (H.J. Andrews) | 45 | WS1 (96 ha) | CC (100%) | no buffer | WNW | Maximum summer T | 23.9 | ~7[4] | Apparently full recovery in 15 years | Johnson and Jones, 2000 |
| | | | | | | Summer mean weekly max. T | not given | 5.4 to 6.4 (first 4 years after logging)[4] | | |
| | | | | | | Summer mean weekly min. T | not given | 1.8 to 2.0 (higher)[4] | | |
| Oregon Cascades (H.J. Andrews) | 45 | WS3 (101 ha) | PC (25%) | Riparian vegetation removed by debris flow after logging | NW | Maximum summer T | 23.9 | ~7[4] | Apparently full recovery in 15 years | Johnson and Jones, 2000 |

TABLE 1. Summary of Experiments Documenting Stream Temperature Changes after Forest Harvesting (cont'd.).

| Study Location | Latitude (°N) | Treatment Catchment | Harvesting Type[3] | Riparian Buffer | Aspect | Temperature Variable | Observed Value After Treatment (°C) | Change Due to Treatment (observed-predicted) (°C) | Recovery to Pre-Treatment Conditions | Reference |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| RAIN DOMINATED (cont'd.) | | | | | | | | | | |
| Oregon Cascades (H.J. Andrews) (cont'd.) | | | | | | Summer mean weekly max. T | not given | 3.5 to 5.2 (first 3 years after disturbance)[4] | | |
| | | | | | | Summer mean weekly min. T | not given | -0.1 to 1.0 (first 3 years after disturbance)[4] | | |
| Oregon Cascades (Bull Run) | 45 | FC1 (59 ha) | PC (25%) and burned | "sparse strips" left on south banks | W | Maximum summer T | 1.5 | 3.0 | Effect on max. T decreased to < 1°C within 6 years | Harr and Fredriksen, 1988 |
| Oregon Cascades (Bull Run) | 45 | FC3 (71 ha) | PC (25%) | "sparse strips" left on south banks | SW | Maximum summer T | 1.6 | 2.5 | Effect on max. T decreased to < 1°C within 6 years | Harr and Fredriksen, 1988 |
| Vancouver Island, British Columbia (Carnation Creek) | 49 | J tributary (24 ha) | CC (100%) | no buffer | | Summer (JJA) diel T range | 2.1 | 1.6[5] (after logging) | Only one post-treatment year | Holtby and Newcombe, 1982 |
| | | | | | | | 3.2 | 2.5[5] (after logging and burning) | Only one post-treatment year | |
| Vancouver Island, British Columbia (Carnation Creek) | 49 | H tributary (12 ha) | CC (100%) | no buffer | | Summer (JJA) diel T range | 1.8 | 1.4[5] | Only one post-treatment year | Holtby and Newcombe, 1982 |
| INTERIOR | | | | | | | | | | |
| Central Interior of BC (Stuart-Takla FFIP) | 55 | B5 (42.5 ha) | CC (38%) | 10-20 m, all trees > 20 cm dbh harvested | NW | Weekly $T_{mean}$ (max. change) | not given | 2.5 | No apparent recovery over 5 years | Macdonald et al., 2003b |
| Central Interior of BC (Stuart-Takla FFIP) | 55 | B5 (150 ha) | CC (40%) | 10-20 m, all trees > 15-20 cm dbh harvested | NW | Weekly $T_{mean}$ (max. change) | not given | 3.0 | No apparent recovery over 5 years | Macdonald et al., 2003b |

TABLE 1. Summary of Experiments Documenting Stream Temperature Changes after Forest Harvesting (cont'd.).

| Study Location | Latitude (°N) | Treatment Catchment | Harvesting Type[1] | Riparian Buffer | Aspect | Temperature Variable | Observed Value After Treatment (°C) | Change Due to Treatment (observed-predicted) (°C) | Recovery to Pre-Treatment Conditions | Reference |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| INTERIOR (cont'd.) | | | | | | | | | | |
| Central Interior of BC (Stuart-Takla FFIP) | 55 | B2 (18 ha) | CC (89%) | 20 m high retention buffer on lower 60% of stream length within cut block | W | Weekly $T_{mean}$ (max. change) | not given | 3.8 | No apparent recovery over 5 years | Macdonald *et al.*, 2003 |
| Central Interior of BC (Stuart-Takla FFIP) | 55 | B1 (313 ha) | CC (0%) | 30 m high retention | W | Weekly $T_{mean}$ (max. change) | not given | 0.5 | No apparent recovery over 5 years | Macdonald *et al.*, 2003b |
| Central Interior of BC (Stuart-Takla FFIP) | 55 | C6 (28 ha) | CC (90%) | 20 m low retention | NE | Weekly $T_{mean}$ (max. change) | not given | At least 5.4 (missing data) | No apparent recovery over 5 years | Macdonald *et al.*, 2003b |
| Central Interior of BC (Stuart-Takla FFIP) | 55 | 118-48 (410 ha) | CC (15%) | 30 m, all commercial trees harvested | SW | Mean $T_{max}$ in Aug. | | 0.5 | No apparent recovery over 3 years | Mellina *et al.*, 2002 |
| | | | | | | Mean $T_{min}$ in Aug. | | -0.2 | No apparent recovery over 3 years | |
| | | | | | | $T_{max}$ in Aug. | 20.1 | 2.2 | Insufficient info. | |
| Central Interior of BC (Stuart-Takla FFIP) | 55 | 118-16 (310 ha) | CC (9%) | 30 m, all commercial trees harvested | SE | Mean $T_{max}$ in Aug. | | 0.3 | No apparent recovery over 3 years | Mellina *et al.*, 2002 |
| | | | | | | Mean $T_{min}$ in Aug. | | -1.1 | No apparent recovery over 3 years | |
| | | | | | | $T_{max}$ in Aug. | 20.1 | 5.1 | Insufficient info. | |

[1]CC = clear-cut, PC = patch cut and number in brackets is % of catchment area treated.
[2]Different creeks with same name.
[3]Computed as difference in maximum observed temperatures between treatment and control streams after logging, compared to difference before logging.
[4]Computed by authors as difference between treatment and control streams due to lack of pre-logging regression.
[5]Computed as difference pre-logging and post-logging for the treatment stream due to lack of calibration with control.

provide an estimate of the effect of clear-cut logging. Winkler *et al.* (2003) inferred similar effect sizes by comparing summer water temperatures for small, high-elevation streams in the southern interior of BC, one in a clear-cut and one in undisturbed forest.

Winter temperatures have received less attention. Feller (1981) found short lived, modest increases in winter temperatures following logging and decreases following logging and slash burning, though there was no clear explanation for these divergent patterns. Post-harvest temperature differences between clear-cut Needle Branch and Flynn Creek (the control) were positive during winter, though smaller than summer differences (Brown and Krygier, 1970). In rain dominated catchments, smaller effects would be expected in winter than in summer, based on the lower energy inputs and higher discharges. In small snowmelt fed catchments, particularly at high elevation or northern sites, ice formation and snow cover within the channel should reduce temperatures to near 0°C regardless of canopy cover (e.g., Mellina *et al.*, 2002; Macdonald *et al.*, 2003b), except possibly in ground water discharge areas.

*Influences of Harvesting With Riparian Buffers*

Studies in rain dominated catchments suggest that buffers may reduce but not entirely protect against increases in summer stream temperature. In the Oregon Coast Range, the mean of the summer monthly maximum temperatures increased by only 2°C at buffered Deer Creek, compared to the 5.5°C increase observed at unbuffered Needle Branch (Harris, 1977; Table 1). However, this comparison is confounded by the fact that the Deer Creek watershed was 25 percent patch-cut, with only a portion of the stream network adjacent to cut blocks, compared to the 100 percent cutting at Needle Branch. Post-logging increases in maximum summer stream temperature of up to 3°C were observed at the two Fox Creek streams in the Oregon Cascades, where sparse or partial-retention buffers were left (Harr and Fredriksen, 1988). In the Washington Coast Range, post-harvest changes in daily maximum temperature ranged from -0.5°C to 2.6°C for three streams with unthinned buffers (15 to 21 m wide), while streams with buffers of nonmerchantable species warmed by 2.8 to 4.9°C (Jackson *et al.*, 2001).

Two studies in snowmelt dominated subboreal catchments examined stream temperature response to harvesting with partial retention buffers, both conducted as part of the Stuart-Takla Fish-Forestry Interaction Project in the central interior of BC (Mellina *et al.*, 2002; Macdonald *et al.*, 2003b). Macdonald *et al.* (2003b) reported maximum changes in mean weekly temperatures that ranged from less than 1°C to more than 5°C for a set of streams subject to a range of forestry treatments (Table 1). Greater warming was observed for the low retention buffers and a patch retention treatment than for the high retention buffers. The protective effect of the buffers was compromised by significant blowdown, which reduced riparian canopy density from about 35 percent to 10 percent at one high retention buffer and from about 15 percent to less than 5 percent at one low retention buffer. Mellina *et al.* (2002) documented temperature responses to clear-cut logging with riparian buffers for two lake headed streams. Both streams cooled in the downstream direction both before and after logging. Mean August temperatures at the downstream ends of the cut blocks were slightly warmer (less than 1°C) after logging, although the maximum daily temperature in August increased by more than 5°C at one stream. The dominant downstream cooling observed both before and after harvest was attributed to the combination of warm source temperatures associated with the lakes and the strong cooling effect of ground water inflow through the clear-cut, as well as the residual shade provided by the partially logged riparian buffer.

*Thermal Recovery Through Time*

Post-harvest summer stream temperatures should decrease through time as riparian vegetation and shade levels recover. Summers (unpublished, cited in Beschta *et al.*, 1987) found that shade levels at sites that had been clear-cut and burned recovered more rapidly in wetter forest types and at lower elevations. Shade recovery to old-growth levels occurred within about 10 years in the Coast Range western hemlock zone and about 20 years in the Cascade Mountain western hemlock zone. Shade recovery was only 50 percent complete after about 20 years in the higher-elevation Pacific silver fir zone in the Cascades. Shade recovery depends not only on vegetation growth but also stream width: narrow streams should recover more rapidly.

In experimental studies, temperature recovery occurred within 5 to 10 years or was at least under way for several rain dominated streams (Brown and Krygier, 1970; Harris, 1977; Feller, 1981; Harr and Fredriksen, 1988). However, recovery took longer in other cases or was not detectable in the post-harvest period in some cases. Johnson and Jones (2000) found that summer stream temperatures recovered after about 15 years for streams that had their channels and riparian zones disturbed by debris flows in the Oregon Cascades, while Feller (1981) found no evidence of recovery seven years after harvest for a catchment subject to logging and slash burning. In the subboreal environment of B.C., Mellina *et al.* (2002) found no evidence of recovery within the first three years, while Macdonald *et al.* (2003b) found no evidence for recovery of summer temperatures within the first five years following harvesting with partial-retention buffers. Because the streams studied by Macdonald *et al.* (2003b) were well shaded by shrubby vegetation both before and after harvest (E. MacIsaac, Fisheries and Oceans Canada, November 29, 2004, personal communication), it appears that shading by low vegetation may not be as effective at maintaining low stream temperatures as that from trees. In addition, blowdown within the buffers may have contributed to the apparent lack of recovery reported by Macdonald *et al.* (2003b).

*Comparison With Studies Outside the Pacific Northwest*

Studies of the effects of forestry on stream temperature have been conducted at locations outside the PNW, including Great Britain (Stott and Marks, 2000), eastern and southern United States (e.g., Swift and Messer, 1971; Hewlett and Fortson, 1982; Rishel *et al.*, 1982; Lynch *et al.*, 1984), Quebec (Prevost *et al.*, 1999), and New Zealand (Rowe and Taylor, 1994). Consistent with results from the PNW, these studies have found that streams subject to canopy removal become warmer in the summer and exhibit greater diurnal fluctuations. However, differences in environmental conditions (climate, hydrology, vegetation), forestry treatments, and reported temperature metrics limit the comparability of quantitative results.

*Effects of Forest Roads*

Forest roads and their rights-of-way would have a similar influence to cut blocks in terms of enhanced solar radiation inputs. Brown *et al.* (1971) observed downstream warming of up to 7°C in a 46 m reach of Deep Cut Creek in Oregon, which was completely cleared of vegetation during road construction. In the central interior of B.C., streams warmed over 2°C across a 50 m right-of-way, 1.4°C across a 30 m right-of-way, and about 0.4°C across a 20 m right-of-way (Herunter *et al.*, 2003). Another possible effect of forest roads is the interception of ground water and its conveyance to a stream via ditches, where it is exposed to solar radiation, effectively replacing the cooling effect of ground water inflow with inflow of warm ditch water. This process has been observed in the central interior of B.C. (D. Maloney, B.C. Ministry of Forests, Northern Interior Region, October 3, 2000, personal communication) and may be most important in low relief terrain, where high water tables could maintain ditch flow during periods of warm weather.

*Downstream and Cumulative Effects*

The potential for cumulative effects associated with warming of headwater streams is a significant management concern. Beschta and Taylor (1988) demonstrated that forest harvesting between 1955 and 1984 in the 325 km$^2$ Salmon Creek watershed produced substantial increases in summer water temperature at the mouth of the watershed. Given that current forest practices in the Pacific Northwest require or recommend buffers around all but the smallest streams and require more careful treatment of unstable terrain, cumulative effects resulting from current practices may be of lower magnitude than those found by Beschta and Taylor (1988). At smaller scales, downstream transmission of clearing heated water would increase the spatial extent of thermal impacts and possibly reduce the habitat value of localized cool water areas that form where headwater streams flow into larger, warmer streams, which tend to be cooler and have higher dissolved oxygen concentrations than other types of cool water areas (Bilby, 1984).

Some authors have argued that downstream cooling is unlikely to occur except in association with cooler ground water or tributary inflow (e.g., Beschta *et al.*, 1987), while others have contended that streams can recover their natural thermal regimes within relatively short distances downstream of forest openings (e.g., Zwieniecki and Newton, 1999). Streams can cool in the downstream direction by dissipation of heat out of the water column or via dilution by cool inflows. Dissipation to the atmosphere (and thus out of the stream-riparian system) can occur via sensible and latent heat exchange and longwave radiation from the water surface. Heat loss via evaporation (latent heat) can be a particularly effective dissipation mechanism at higher water temperatures for larger streams (Benner and Beschta, 2000; Mohseni *et al.*, 2002). However, the effectiveness of evaporation may be reduced in small forest streams by negative feedback caused by accumulation of water vapor above the stream due to poor ventilation. Dissipation of heat from the water column into the bed can occur via conduction and hyporheic exchange (assuming the bed and hyporheic zone are cooler than stream water), but reciprocally, these mechanisms would add that heat to the bed and hyporheic zone (Poole *et al.*, 2001). Therefore, cooling of the water column may occur at the expense of warming the streambed and riparian zone, which can influence rates of growth and development of benthic invertebrates and influence salmonid incubation (Vannote and Sweeney, 1980; Crisp, 1990; Malcolm *et al.*, 2002).

Reported downstream temperature changes below forest clearings are highly variable, with some streams cooling but others continuing to warm (e.g., McGurk, 1989; Caldwell *et al.*, 1991; Zwieniecki and Newton, 1999; Story *et al.*, 2003). The maximum cooling reported in the literature was almost 7°C over a distance of about 120 m (Greene, 1950). The magnitude of downstream cooling may be positively related in some cases to the maximum upstream temperature. Keith *et al.* (1998) found that greater cooling occurred on sunny days, when maximum stream temperatures were greater than 20°C, than on cloudy days, when maximum stream temperatures were only approximately 13°C. Storey and Cowley (1997) observed downstream cooling of 1 to 2°C for two streams in New Zealand where upstream temperatures were 20°C or greater. In a third stream, which had a narrow margin of forest in the riparian zone upstream of the study reach, upstream temperatures were lower, approximately 17°C, and no downstream cooling was observed. However, a high upstream temperature does not ensure that downstream cooling will occur, as illustrated by Brown *et al.* (1971), who observed no significant cooling despite an upstream temperature of 29°C. These studies all employed only post-treatment data, so that even where cooling was observed, there is no basis to assess whether the stream temperature had recovered to pre-logging levels.

Of the studies reviewed, only three attempted to quantify the processes governing downstream temperature changes under shade (Brown *et al.*, 1971; Story *et al.*, 2003; Johnson, 2004). For one clear July day, Brown *et al.* (1971) found that the latent and conductive heat fluxes were the only cooling (negative) terms because ground water inflow was negligible, and these were offset by the warming influences of net radiation and sensible heat, even though the forest canopy substantially reduced inputs of solar radiation. This estimated net input of heat is consistent with the observed lack of significant downstream cooling. Story *et al.* (2003) found that radiative and turbulent energy exchanges at heavily shaded sites on two streams represented a net input of heat during most afternoons and therefore could not explain the observed cooling of up to more than 4°C over distances of less than 150 m. Instead, downstream decreases in daily maximum temperatures were caused by energy exchanges between the streams and their subsurface environments via ground water inflow, hyporheic exchange, and heat conduction. In contrast, Johnson (2004) demonstrated that downstream cooling could occur in an artificially shaded stream with no ground water inflow or hyporheic exchange. Clearly, more research is required to clarify the mechanisms responsible for downstream cooling and how they respond to local conditions.

Three factors may mitigate against cumulative effects of stream warming. First, although cooling by dilution of streamwater with colder inflow water cannot reduce downstream temperatures to pre-harvest levels, dilution may be great enough, especially at larger spatial scales, to render the changes ecologically insignificant, as long as the total discharge of clearing-heated streams is not a substantial fraction of the total discharge (Equation 2). Second, the effects of energy inputs will not be linearly additive throughout a stream network. This is a consequence of the relation between energy exchange (particularly energy losses via evaporation and longwave radiation) and stream temperature: increased temperatures in one reach due to reduction of riparian shade may reduce the propensity for the stream to warm in downstream reaches, even in the absence of dilution by ground water or tributary inflow. Finally, where streams flow into lakes, ponds, or wetlands, the resetting of stream temperatures may minimize the possibility for cumulative effects below the lentic environment (Ward and Stanford, 1983).

An important aspect of cumulative effects is the indirect impacts of forest harvesting. For example, removing riparian vegetation not only reduces shade but can result in a stream becoming wider and shallower due to bank erosion, which can produce a greater temperature response to the additional heat inputs. Aggradation caused by logging related mass movements and subsequent sediment loading can similarly cause stream widening and promote warming (Beschta and Taylor, 1988). In addition, debris flows that remove vegetation and scour channel beds to bedrock can lead to marked warming in headwater tributaries (Johnson and Jones, 2000).

## MONITORING AND PREDICTING STREAM TEMPERATURE AND ITS CAUSAL FACTORS

Successful management of forestry operations for maintenance of stream temperature regimes requires accurate, cost effective tools for monitoring stream temperature and its causal factors and for predicting the effects of different harvesting options.

*Monitoring Stream Temperature*

Most recent studies have employed submersible temperature loggers to monitor temperature. These are relatively inexpensive and sufficiently accurate (typically within 0.2°C) for forestry related applications. They also provide sufficient temporal resolution to allow calculation of temperature metrics at a range of time scales, such as maximum daily temperature and accumulated seasonal degree days. Multiple loggers should be used within and downstream of clearings to avoid sampling problems resulting from small scale spatial variability (Story *et al.*, 2003; Moore *et al.*, 2005).

Forward looking infrared radiometry from helicopters has been used for investigating stream temperature patterns in medium to large streams (Torgersen *et al.*, 1999, 2001). However, its application to headwater streams is limited by the sensor resolution relative to typical channel widths for small streams and the fact that low vegetation overhanging the channel may obscure the water surface. However, the technology may be invaluable in identifying cool water areas at tributary mouths and their significance as thermal refugia.

*Measuring Shade*

Given the importance of solar radiation in causing stream warming following forest harvesting, reliable and practical methods for measuring shade are required for use as indicators of the effectiveness of riparian buffers in protecting against stream temperature changes and for use in predictive models of stream temperature. Many models use canopy and terrain angles, either field measured with a clinometer or estimated from the geometry of the riparian canopy and stream, to determine whether direct solar radiation is blocked. Where blockage by vegetation occurs, the direct radiation reaching the stream is reduced according to estimates of the transmissivity or shade density of the riparian canopy (e.g., Beschta and Weatherred, 1984; Rutherford *et al.*, 1997; Sridhar *et al.*, 2004).

Ocular estimates of canopy cover using instruments such as a spherical densiometer are often used as indices or as model input (e.g., Sullivan *et al.*, 1990; Mellina *et al.*, 2002). Although ocular instruments are generally inexpensive and easy to use in the field, they are prone to operator error due to subjective interpretation. In addition, measurements such as spherical density may not provide a good index of solar radiation blockage except in a uniform canopy. Brazier and Brown (1973) developed an instrument for measuring angular canopy density (ACD), which is the canopy density in the portion of the sky through which the sun passes during the time of maximum potential stream heating, typically July or August, depending on location and hydrologic regime. Teti (2001) described an alternative, robust instrument for measuring ACD based on a convex mirror. Another instrument, the Solar Pathfinder™, focuses on the portion of the canopy responsible for blocking direct solar radiation throughout the day.

Hemispherical photography offers an alternative that is less prone to operator error than ocular methods and allows computation of a range of parameters that are strongly related to solar radiation exposure (Ringold *et al.*, 2003), but it requires off-site analysis. Digital cameras that can be used with fish-eye lenses are steadily decreasing in price, and functional software packages are available both commercially and by free distribution (Frazer *et al.*, 1999).

Shade can also be characterized by comparing radiation or light levels measured above the stream to those at an open site. For example, Webb and Zhang (1997) used a hand-held photographic light meter, following Bartholow (1989), while Davies-Colley and Payne (1998) used a leaf area index canopy analyzer.

Although studies have compared canopy density parameters estimated by different methods (e.g., Englund *et al.*, 2000; Ringold *et al.*, 2003), few studies appear to have assessed which approach provides the best measure of shade for stream temperature assessment. Brazier and Brown (1973) estimated the amount of "heat blockage" caused by the canopy cover in riparian buffers by comparing observed water temperatures to temperatures estimated for a situation of no canopy shade. The good relation between estimated heat blockage and measured ACD confirmed the relevance of ACD as an indicator of buffer effectiveness for temperature control. Rutherford *et al.* (1997) found substantial sampling variability in their shade estimates for a small stream in New Zealand. Using the average field measured shade value in the physically based model STREAMLINE resulted in overestimates of stream temperature. Moore *et al.* (2005) used the spatial distribution of canopy gaps derived from hemispherical canopy photographs, in conjunction with measurements of total and direct solar radiation at an open site, to model the temporal variation of solar irradiance at a stream surface for a clear sky day. Their inability to close a reach scale energy budget may have resulted from sampling bias associated with the canopy photographs but could also have arisen from errors in estimates of the other energy exchanges. Further work is needed to verify predicted solar radiation based on shade measurements, ideally using solar radiation measurements to avoid confounding factors involved in stream heat budgets.

These efforts will be particularly important for application in complex shade environments such as partial-retention riparian buffers or variable retention harvesting units.

In addition to the quantitative measurement of shade, there are questions about shade "quality" in terms of minimizing energy inputs to a stream. For example, Hewlett and Fortson (1982) presented evidence that shade from low, brushy vegetation was less effective than taller trees at moderating water temperatures for a stream in the Georgia Piedmont. Similarly, Macdonald *et al.* (2003b) observed significant temperature increases in central BC despite cover by low vegetation. If these effects are real, it may be that overhanging low vegetation transmits more solar radiation than a coniferous canopy that obstructs the same fraction of sky view, or that it promotes net energy inputs to a stream by influencing longwave radiation and sensible and/or latent heat.

### *Predicting the Influences of Forest Harvesting on Stream Temperature*

Empirical models for predicting stream temperature response to forest harvesting in the PNW include Mitchell's (1999) regression model for predicting the mean monthly stream temperature following complete removal of the riparian canopy, a "temperature screen" for predicting stream temperature as a function of elevation and percent stream shade in Washington (Sullivan *et al.*, 1990) and a multiple regression model that predicts downstream temperature changes as a function of upstream temperature and canopy cover in the central interior of B.C. (Mellina *et al.*, 2002). Although empirical models have the virtues of simplicity and low requirements for input data, they usually involve significant uncertainties, especially when applied to situations different from those represented in the calibration data (e.g., different locations, weather conditions).

Physically based models incorporating energy balance concepts have been developed for application to individual stream reaches, including the seminal model introduced by Brown (1969, 1985), TEMP-84 (Beschta and Weatherred, 1984), TEMPEST (Adams and Sullivan, 1989), Heat Source (Boyd, 1996), and STREAMLINE (Rutherford *et al.*, 1997). Models to simulate stream temperatures at the stream network or catchment scale include SNTEMP (Mattax and Quigley, 1989; Bartholow, 1991, 2000) and a model based on the HSPF (Hydrological Simulation Program – FORTRAN) model developed by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency and the U.S. Geological Survey (Chen *et al.*, 1998a,b). Other models have been developed, but the ones mentioned are broadly representative of the range of complexity.

Sullivan *et al.* (1990) tested the ability of four reach scale models (Brown's model, TEMP-86, TEMPEST, and SSTEMP) and three catchment scale models (QUAL2E, SNTEMP, and MODEL-Y) to predict forestry related temperature increases in Washington. The catchment scale models required more input data than would be available for operational applications and did not provide accurate temperature predictions. TEMP-86 provided accurate predictions for mean, minimum, and maximum temperatures but required upstream temperatures as input to achieve the high level of performance. TEMPEST was less sensitive to specification of input temperatures, making it more suitable as an operational tool (Sullivan *et al.*, 1990).

Sridhar *et al.* (2004) addressed the problem of unknown upstream temperatures by using a reach length of 1,800 m above the prediction point. For this reach length, the effect of the upstream boundary condition on modeled downstream temperatures became negligible for low flow conditions. However, this approach would not necessarily be appropriate for the headmost streams in the channel network, where the reach of interest may extend only a few hundred meters or less downstream from the channel head. In such cases, an estimate of ground water temperature may be appropriate as an upstream boundary condition.

As mentioned previously, Rutherford *et al.* (1997) found that their model predictions were biased when the mean field measured values for shade were used as input. Although they were able to match the daily maximum and minimum temperatures by increasing the shade values to the maximum observed values, the timing of the diurnal temperature wave was incorrect, suggesting that some process was not properly represented. They hypothesized that flow through gravels (i.e., hyporheic exchange) could have been one of the causes. The significance of hyporheic exchange on reach scale temperature patterns should be investigated further.

## DISCUSSION AND CONCLUSIONS

### *Summary of Forest Harvesting Effects on Microclimate and Stream Temperature*

Forest harvesting can increase solar radiation in the riparian zone as well as wind speed and exposure to air advected from clearings, typically causing increases in summertime air, soil, and stream temperatures and decreases in relative humidity. Riparian buffers can help minimize these changes. Edge effects penetrating into a buffer generally decline rapidly within about one tree height into the forest under most circumstances. Solar radiation, soil temperature, and wind speed appear to adjust to forest conditions more rapidly than air temperature and relative humidity.

Clear-cut harvesting can produce significant daytime increases in stream temperature during summer, driven primarily by the increased solar radiation associated with decreased canopy cover but also influenced by channel morphology and stream hydrology. Winter temperature changes have not been as well documented but appear to be smaller in magnitude and sometimes opposite in direction in rain-dominated catchments. Although retention of riparian vegetation can help protect against temperature changes, substantial warming has been observed in streams with both unthinned and partial retention buffers. Road rights-of-way can also produce significant warming. Changes to bed temperature regimes have not been well studied but can be similar to changes in surface water in areas with downwelling flow.

Although the experimental results are qualitatively consistent, it is difficult to make quantitative comparisons of experimental results because the studies have expressed temperature changes using incommensurable temperature metrics. For the studies where similar metrics were available (e.g., maximum summer temperature), treatment effects exhibited substantial variability, even where the treatments appeared to be comparable (e.g., HJA Watershed 1 and Needle Branch). Thus, on their own, experimental results cannot easily be extrapolated to other situations. Application of heat budget models may help to diagnose the reasons for variations in response in experimental studies and provide a tool for confident extrapolation to new situations.

Increased stream temperatures associated with forest harvesting appear to decline to pre-logging levels within five to ten years in many cases, though thermal recovery can take longer in others. There is mixed evidence for the efficacy of low, shrubby vegetation in promoting recovery.

Temperature increases in headwater streams are unlikely to produce substantial changes in the temperatures of larger streams into which they flow, unless the total inflow of clear-cut heated tributaries constitutes a significant proportion of the total flow in the receiving stream. Clearing heated streams may or may not cool when they flow into shaded areas. Where downstream cooling does not occur rapidly, the spatial extent of thermal impacts is effectively extended to lower reaches, which may be fish bearing. In addition, warming of headwater streams could reduce the local cooling effect where they flow into larger streams, thus diminishing the value of those cool water areas as thermal refugia.

*Biological Consequences and Implications for Forest Practices*

It is difficult to estimate the biological consequences of harvesting related changes in riparian microclimate and stream temperature based on the existing results. In terms of terrestrial ecology in riparian zones, there is incomplete knowledge regarding the numbers of species that are unique to small streams and their riparian zones, as well as their population dynamics, sensitivity to microclimatic changes, and ability to recolonize disturbed habitat (Richardson *et al.*, 2005). The ecological effects of stream temperature changes in small, nonfish bearing streams are also unclear. While it is generally acknowledged that changes in thermal regime can influence macroinvertebrates (Vannote and Sweeney, 1980; Ward and Stanford, 1992), the metrics typically presented for stream temperature changes (e.g., maximum summer temperature) may not be the most biologically significant for streams that remain at sublethal temperatures. Given the emerging appreciation for the role of small streams in providing organic matter to downstream fish bearing reaches (e.g., Wipfli and Gregovich, 2002), a better understanding is required of how changes in the physical conditions in small streams and their interactions with chemical and biological processes influence their downstream exports.

Based on the available studies, a one-tree-height buffer on each side of a stream should be reasonably effective in reducing harvesting impacts on both riparian microclimate and stream temperature. Narrower buffers would provide at least partial protection, but their effectiveness may be compromised by wind throw, and they could still incur costs by complicating access and yarding operations. Alternative approaches to protecting riparian values may be possible that avoid at least some of the problems associated with buffers. For example, in B.C., many companies retain green tree patches within a cut block to provide future wildlife habitat. If these were positioned where they could shade the stream, they could provide at least some of the function of a riparian buffer but perhaps with lower wind throw risk and with less impact on ease of access and yarding.

*Issues for Future Research*

Riparian microclimates appear to have been relatively little studied, both in general and specifically in relation to the effects of different forest practices. Further research needs to address these knowledge gaps.

Shade is the dominant control on forestry related stream warming, and although algorithms exist for estimating it based on riparian vegetation height and channel geometry, there is a need to refine methods for measuring it in the field and for modeling it. Ground-based hemispherical photographs offer great potential for developing both static indices of shade as well as a tool for modeling the temporal variation of solar transmission as a function of the spatial distribution of canopy gaps. Further research should focus on the application of hemispherical photography, including an assessment of sampling variability and bias. In addition, the effects of low deciduous vegetation on the heat budget of small streams should be examined to help understand and predict trajectories of thermal recovery in time.

Further research should address the thermal implications of surface/subsurface hydrologic interactions. Studies should focus on both the local scale and reach scale effects of heat exchange associated with hyporheic flow paths, particularly those associated with step pool features, which are common in steep headwater streams. Bed temperature patterns in small streams and their relation to stream temperature should be researched, especially in relation to the effects on benthic invertebrates and other nonfish species. The hypothesis that warming of shallow ground water in clear-cuts can contribute to stream warming should be addressed, ideally by a combination of experimental and process/modeling studies.

The physical basis for temperature changes downstream of clearings needs to be clarified. In particular, it may be useful to determine whether diagnostic site factors exist that can predict reaches where cooling will occur. Such information could assist in the identification of "thermal recovery reaches" to limit the downstream propagation of stream warming. It could also help to identify areas within a cut block where shade from a retention patch would have the greatest influence.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Production of this manuscript was supported by funding from Forest Renewal British Columbia and editorial assistance by C. Blurton. Constructive comments by P. Teti, E. MacIsaac, and three anonymous reviewers helped increase the clarity and correctness of this paper.

## LITERATURE CITED

Adams, P.W., A.L. Flint, and R.L. Fredriksen, 1991. Long-Term Patterns in Soil Moisture and Revegetation After a Clearcut of a Douglas-Fir Forest in Oregon. Forest Ecology Management 41:249-263.

Adams, T.N. and K. Sullivan. 1989. The Physics of Forest Stream Heating: A Simple Model. TFW-WQ3-90-007, Washington Department of Natural Resources, Olympia, Washington, 30 pp. + 9 figures. *Available at* http://www.dnr.wa.gov/forestpractices/adaptivemanagement/cmer/publications/TFW_WQ3_90_007.pdf. *Accessed* on June 18, 2008.

Alexander, M.D. and D. Caissie, 2003. Variability and Comparison of Hyporheic Water Temperatures and Seepage Fluxes in a Small Atlantic Salmon Stream. Ground Water 41:72-82.

Alexander, M.D., K.T.B. MacQuarrie, D. Caissie, and K.D. Butler, 2003. The Thermal Regime of Shallow Groundwater and a Small Atlantic Salmon Stream Bordering a Clearcut with a Forested Streamside Buffer. *In:* Proceedings, Annual Conference of the Canadian Society for Civil Engineering, Moncton, New Brunswick. Canadian Society for Civil Engineering, Montreal, Quebec, Canada, pp. GCL 343-1-10.

Arscott, D.B., K. Tockner, and J.V. Ward, 2001. Thermal Heterogeneity Along a Braided Floodplain River (Tagliamento River, Northeastern Italy). Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 58:2359-2373.

Atzet, T. and R.H. Waring, 1970. Selective Filtering of Light by Coniferous Forests and Minimum Light Energy Requirements for Regeneration. Canadian Journal of Botany 48:2136-2167.

Bartholow, J.M. 1989. Stream Temperature Investigations: Field and Analytic Methods. Instream Flow Information Paper No. 13, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Report 89 (17), Washington, D.C., 139 pp.

Bartholow, J.M., 1991. A Modeling Assessment of the Thermal Regime for an Urban Sport Fishery. Environmental Management 15(6):833-845.

Bartholow, J.M., 2000, Estimating Cumulative Effects of Clearcutting on Stream Temperatures. Rivers 7(4):284-297.

Benner, D.A. and R.L. Beschta, 2000. Effects of Channel Morphology on Evaporative Heat Loss From Arid-Land Streams. *In:* Proceedings of the International Conference on Riparian Ecology and Management in Multi-Land Use Watersheds, P.J. Wigington, Jr., and R.L. Beschta (Editors). American Water Resources Association, TPS-00-2, pp. 47-52.

Beschta, R.L., 1997. Riparian Shade and Stream Temperature: An Alternative Perspective. Rangelands 19:25-28.

Beschta, R.L., R.E. Bilby, G.W. Brown, L.B. Holtby, and T. D. Hofstra, 1987. Stream Temperature and Aquatic Habitat: Fisheries and Forestry Interactions. In: Streamside Management: Forestry and Fishery Interactions, E.O Salo and T. W. Cundy (Editors). University of Washington, Institute of Forest Resources, Contribution No. 57, Seattle, Washington, pp. 191-232.

Beschta, R.L. and R.L. Taylor, 1988. Stream Temperature Increases and Land Use in a Forested Oregon Watershed. Water Resources Bulletin 24:19-25.

Beschta, R.L. and J. Weatherred, 1984. TEMP-84. A Computer Model for Predicting Stream Temperatures Resulting From the Management of Streamside Vegetation. Watershed Systems Development Group, Ft. Collins, Colorado. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, D.C., WSDG-AD-00009.

Bilby, R.E., 1984. Characteristics and Frequency of Cool-Water Areas in a Western Washington Stream. Journal of Freshwater Ecology 2:593-602.

Black, T.A., J.-M. Chen, X. Lee, and R.M. Sagar, 1991. Characteristics of Shortwave and Longwave Irradiances Under a Douglas-Fir Forest Stand. Canadian Journal of Forest Research 21:1020-1028.

Bogan, T., O. Mohseni, and H.G. Stefan, 2003. Stream Temperature-Equilibrium Temperature Relationship. Water Resources Research 39:1245, doi:10.1029/2003WR002034.

Bourque, C.P.-A. and J.H. Pomeroy, 2001. Effects of Forest Harvesting on Summer Stream Temperatures in New Brunswick, Canada: An Inter-Catchment, Multiple-Year Comparison. Hydrology and Earth Systems Science 5:599-613.

Boyd, M., 1996. Heat Source: Stream Temperature Prediction Model. Master's Thesis, Departments of Civil and Bioresource Engineering, Oregon State University, Corvallis, Oregon.

Brazier, J.R. and G.W. Brown, 1973. Buffer Strips for Stream Temperature Control. Oregon State Forest Research Laboratory Paper 15, Oregon State University, Corvallis, Oregon, 9 pp.

Brosofske, K.D., J. Chen, R.J. Naiman, and J.F. Franklin, 1997. Harvesting Effects on Microclimatic Gradients From Small Streams to Uplands in Western Washington. Ecological Applications 7:1188-1200.

Brown, G.W., 1969. Predicting Temperatures of Small Streams. Water Resources Research 5:68-75.

Brown, G.W., 1972. An Improved Temperature Prediction Model for Small Streams. Report WRRI-16, Water Resources Research Institute, Department of Forest Engineering, Oregon State University, Corvallis, Oregon, 20 pp.

Brown, G.W., 1985. Water Temperature. *In:* Forestry and Water Quality (Second Edition). Oregon State University Press, Corvallis, Oregon, Chapter III, pp. 47-57.

Brown, G.W. and J.T. Krygier, 1970. Effects of Clear-Cutting on Stream Temperature. Water Resources Research 6:1133-1139.

Brown, G.W., G.W. Swank, and J. Rothacher, 1971. Water Temperature in the Steamboat Drainage. Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experimental Station Research Paper PNW-119, US Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Portland, Oregon.

Brownlee, M.J., B.G. Shepherd, and D.R. Bustard, 1988. Some Effects of Forest Management on Water Quality in the Slim Creek Watershed in the Central Interior of British Columbia. Canadian Technical Reports on Fisheries and Aquatic Science 1613, Canada Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada, 41 pp.

Cadenasso, M.L., M.M. Traynor, and S.T.A. Pickett, 1997. Functional Location of Forest Edges: Gradients of Multiple Physical Factors. Canadian Journal of Forest Research 27:774-782.

Calder, I.R., 1990. Evaporation in the Uplands. John Wiley and Sons, New York, New York.

Caldwell, J.E., K. Doughty, and K. Sullivan, 1991. Evaluation of Downstream Temperature Effects of Type 4/5 Waters. T/F/W Report No. WQ5-91-004, T/F/W CMER Water Quality Steering Committee and Washington Department of Natural Resources, Olympia, Washington.

Chen, J., J.F. Franklin, and T.A. Spies, 1993a. Contrasting Microclimates Among Clearcut, Edge, and Interior of Old-Growth Douglas-Fir Forest. Agricultural and Forest Meteorology 63:219-237.

Chen, J., J.F. Franklin, and T.A. Spies, 1993b. An Empirical Model for Predicting Diurnal Air-Temperature Gradients From Edge Into Old-Growth Douglas-Fir Forest. Ecological Modeling 61:179-198.

Chen, J., J.F. Franklin, and T.A. Spies, 1995. Growing-Season Microclimatic Gradients From Clearcut Edges Into Old-Growth Douglas-Fir Forests. Ecological Applications 5:74-86.

Chen, J., S.C. Saunders, T.R. Crow, R.J. Naiman, K.D. Brosofske, G.D. Mroz, B.L., Brookshire, and J.F. Franklin, 1999. Microclimate in Forest Ecosystem and Landscape Ecology. BioScience 49:288-297.

Chen, Y.D., R.F. Carsel, S.C. McCutcheon, and W.L. Nutter, 1998a. Stream Temperature Simulation of Riparian Areas: I. Watershed-Scale Model Development. Journal of Environmental Engineering 124:304-315.

Chen, Y.D., S.C. McCutcheon, D.J. Norton, and W.L. Nutter, 1998b. Stream Temperature Simulation of Riparian Areas: II. Model Application. Journal of Environmental Engineering 124:316-328.

Constantz, J., 1998. Interaction Between Stream Temperature, Streamflow, and Ground water Exchanges in Alpine Streams. Water Resources Research 34:1609-1615.

Crisp. D.T., 1990. Water Temperature in a Stream Gravel Bed and Implications for Salmonid Incubation. Freshwater Biology 23:601-612.

Curry, R.A., D.A Scruton, and K.D. Clarke, 2002. The Thermal Regimes of Brook Trout Incubation Habitats and Evidence of Changes During Forestry Operations. Canadian Journal of Forest Research 32:1200-1207.

Danehy, R.J. and B.J. Kirpes, 2000. Relative Humidity Gradients Across Riparian Areas in Eastern Oregon and Washington Forests. Northwest Science 74:224-233.

Davies-Colley, R.J. and G.W. Payne, 1998. Measuring Stream Shade. Journal of the North American Benthological Society 17:250-260.

Davies-Colley R.J., G.W. Payne, and M. van Elswijk, 2000. Microclimate Gradients Across a Forest Edge. New Zealand Journal of Ecology 24:111-121.

Dignan, P. and L. Bren, 2003. Modelling Light Penetration Edge Effects For Stream Buffer Design in Mountain Ash Forest in Southeastern Australia. Forest Ecology and Management 179:95-106.

Ebersole, J.L., W.J. Liss, and C.A. Frissel, 2003. Cold Water Patches in Warm Streams: Physicochemical Characteristics and the Influence of Shading. Journal of the American Water Resources Association (JAWRA) 39:355-368.

Edinger, J.E., D.W. Duttweiler, and J.C. Geyer, 1968. The Response of Water Temperatures to Meteorological Conditions. Water Resources Research 4:1137-1143.

England, S.R., J.J. O'Brien, and D.B. Clark, 2000. Evaluation of Digital and Film Hemispherical Photography and Spherical Densiometry for Measuring Forest Light Environments. Canadian Journal of Forest Research 30:1999-2005.

Evans, E.C., G.R. McGregor, and G.E. Petts, 1998. River Energy Budgets With Special Reference to River Bed Processes. Hydrological Processes 12:575-595.

FAO (Food and Agriculture Organization), 1962. Forest Influences. Forestry and Forest Product Studies No. 15, Food and Agriculture Organization, United Nations, Rome, Italy.

Federer, C.A., 1971. Solar Radiation Absorption by Leafless Hardwood Forests. Agricultural Meteorology 9:3-20.

Federer, C.A. and C.B. Tanner, 1966. Spectral Distribution of Light in Forests. Ecology 47:555-560.

Feller, M.C. 1981. Effects of Clearcutting and Slashburning on Stream Temperature in Southwestern British Columbia. Water Resources Bulletin 17:863-867.

Frazer, G.W., C.D. Canham, and K.P. Lertzman, 1999. Gap Light Analyzer (GLA). Version 2.0: Imaging Software to Extract Canopy Structure and Gap Light Transmission Indices From True-Colour Fisheye Photographs. Users Manual and Program Documentation, Simon Fraser University, Burnaby, B.C. and the Institute of Ecosystem Studies, Millbrook, New York.

Geiger, R., R.H. Aron, and P. Todhunter, 1995. The Climate Near the Ground (5th Edition). Vieweg, Wiesbaden, Germany.

Greene, G.E., 1950. Land Use and Trout Streams. Journal of Soil Water Conservations 5:125-126.

Gulliver, J.S. and H.G. Stefan, 1986. Wind Function for a Sheltered Stream. Journal of Environmental Engineering 112:387-399.

Hagan, J.M. and A.A. Whitman, 2000. Microclimate Changes Across Upland and Riparian Clearcut-Forest Boundaries in Maine. *In:* Mosaic Science Notes 2000-4. Manomet Center for Conservation Sciences, Manomet, Maine, 6 pp. *Available at* http://www.manometmaine.com/pdf/MSN2000-4.pdf . *Accessed* on June 18, 2008.

Harr, R.D. and R.L. Fredriksen, 1988. Water Quality After Logging Small Watersheds Within the Bull Run Watershed, Oregon. Water Resources Bulletin 24(5):1103-1111.

Harris, D.D., 1977. Hydrologic Changes After Logging in Two Small Oregon Coastal Watersheds. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 2037. U.S. Geological Survey, Washington, D.C., 31 pp.

Hartman, G.F. and J.C. Scrivener, 1990. Impacts of Forestry Practices on a Coastal Stream Ecosystem, Carnation Creek, British Columbia. Canadian Bulletin of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 223, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada, 148 pp.

Harvey, J.W. and K.E. Bencala, 1993. The Effect of Streambed Topography on Surface-Subsurface Water Exchange in Mountain Catchments. Water Resources Research 29:89-98.

Herunter, H.E., J.S. Macdonald, and E.A. MacIsaac, 2003. Influence of Logging Road Right-of-Way Size on Small Stream Water Temperature and Sediment Infiltration in the Interior of B.C. *In:* Forestry Impacts on Fish Habitat in the Northern Interior of British Columbia: A Compendium of Research From the Stuart-Takla Fish-Forestry Interaction Study, E. MacIsaac (Editor). Canadian Technical Report on Fisheries and Aquatic Science 2509, Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Vancouver, British, Columbia, Canada. pp. 129-143.

Hetherington, E.D., 1987. The Importance of Forests in the Hydrological Regime. *In:* Canadian Aquatic Resources, M.C. Healy and R.R. Wallace (Editors). Canadian Bulletin of Fisheries and Aquatic 215, Canada Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Ottawa, Canada, pp. 179-211.

Hewlett, J.D. and J.C. Fortson, 1982. Stream Temperature Under an Inadequate Buffer Strip in the Southeast Piedmont. Water Resources Bulletin 18:983-988.

Holtby, B. and C.P. Newcombe, 1982. A Preliminary Analysis of Logging-Related Temperature Changes in Carnation Creek, British Columbia. *In:* Proceedings of the Carnation Creek Workshop: A 10 year Review, G.F. Hartman (Editor). Canada Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Pacific Biological Station, Nanaimo, British Columbia, Canada, pp. 81-99.

Ice, G.G., J. Light, and M. Reiter, 2004. Use of Natural Temperature Patterns to Identify Achievable Stream Temperature Criteria for Forest Streams. Western Journal of Applied Forestry 19:252-259.

Jackson, C.R., C.A. Sturm and J.M. Ward, 2001. Timber Harvest Impacts on Small Headwater Stream Channels in the Coast Ranges of Washington. Journal of the American Water Resources Association (JAWRA) 37:1533-1549.

Jarvis, P.G., G.B. James, and J.J. Landsberg, 1976. Coniferous Forests. *In:* Vegetation and the Atmosphere. Volume 2. Case Studies, J.L. Monteith (Editor). Academic Press, London, United Kingdom, pp. 171-240.

Johnson, S.L., 2004. Factors Influencing Stream Temperatures in Small Streams: Substrate Effects and a Shading Experiment. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 61:913-923

Johnson, S.L. and J.A. Jones, 2000. Stream Temperature Responses to Forest Harvest and Debris Flows in Western Cascades, Oregon. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 57(Suppl. 2):30-39.

Kasahara, T. and S.M. Wondzell, 2003. Geomorphic Controls on Hyporheic Exchange Flow in Mountain Streams. Water Resources Research 39(1),1005 pp., doi:10.1029/2002WR001386.

Keith, R.M., T.C. Bjornn, W.R. Meehan, N.J. Hetrick, and M.A. Brusven, 1998. Response of Juvenile Salmonids to Riparian and Instream Cover Modifications in Small Streams Flowing Through Second-Growth Forests of Southeast Alaska. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 127:889-907.

Larson, L.L. and S.L. Larson, 1996. Riparian Shade and Stream Temperature: A Perspective. Rangelands 18:149-152.

Ledwith, T., 1996. The Effects of Buffer Strip Width on Air Temperature and Relative Humidity in a Stream Riparian Zone. Networker 6(6), The Watershed Management Council. *Available at* http://www.watershed.org/news/sum_96/buffer.html. *Accessed* in June 2008.

Lynch, J.A., G.B. Rishel and E.S. Corbett, 1984. Thermal Alteration of Streams Draining Clearcut Watersheds: Quantification and Biological Implications. Hydrobiologia 111:161-169.

Macdonald, J.S., H. Herunter, and R.D. Moore, 2003a. Temperatures in Aquatic Habitats: The Impacts of Forest Harvesting in the Interior of B.C. *In:* Forestry Impacts on Fish Habitat in the Northern Interior of British Columbia: A Compendium of Research From the Stuart-Takla Fish-Forestry Interaction Study, E. MacIsaac (Editor). Canadian Technical Report on Fisheries and Aquatic Science 2509, Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada, pp. 101-116.

Macdonald, J.S., E.A. MacIsaac, and H.E. Herunter, 2003b. The Effect of Variable-Retention Riparian Buffers on Water Temperatures in Small Headwater Streams in Sub-Boreal Forest Ecosystems of British Columbia. Canadian Journal of Forest Research 33:1371-1382.

Malard, F., A. Mangin, U. Uehlinger, and J.V. Ward, 2001. Thermal Heterogeneity in the Hyporheic Zone of a Glacial Floodplain. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 58:1319-1335.

Malard, F., K. Tockner, M.J. Dole-Olivier, and J.V. Ward, 2002. A Landscape Perspective of Surface-Subsurface Hydrological Exchanges in River Corridors. Freshwater Biology 47:621-640.

Malcolm, I.A., C. Soulsby, and A.F. Youngson, 2002. Thermal Regime in the Hyporheic Zone of Two Contrasting Salmonid Spawning Streams: Ecological and Hydrological Implications. Fisheries Management and Ecology 9:1-10.

Mattax, B.L. and T.M. Quigley, 1989. Validation and Sensitivity Analysis of the Stream Network Temperature Model on Small Watersheds in Northeast Oregon. *In:* Headwaters Hydrology, W. Woessner and D. Potts (Editors). American Water Resources Association, pp. 391-398.

McCaughey, J.H., B.D. Amiro, A.W. Robertson, and D.L. Spittlehouse, 1997. Forest Environments. *In:* The Surface Climates of Canada, W.G. Bailey, T.R. Oke and W.R. Rouse (Editors.). McGill University Press, Kingston, Ontario, Canada, pp. 247-276.

McGurk, B.J., 1989. Predicting Stream Temperature After Riparian Vegetation Removal. *In:* Proceedings of the California Riparian Systems Conference. USDA Forest Service General Technical Report PSW-110, Davis, California, pp. 157-164.

Mellina, E., D. Moore, P. Beaudry, S. Macdonald, S.G. Hinch, and G. Pearson, 2002. Effects of Forest Harvesting on Stream Temperatures in the Central Interior of British Columbia: The Moderating Influence of Groundwater and Lakes. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 59:1886-1900.

Mitchell, S., 1999. A Simple Model for Estimating Mean Monthly Stream Temperatures after Riparian Canopy Removal. Environmental Management 24:77-83.

Mohseni, O., T.R. Erickson, and H.G. Stefan, 2002. Upper Bounds for Stream Temperatures in the Contiguous United States. Journal of Environmental Engineering 128:4-11.

Moore, R.D., P. Sutherland, T. Gomi, and A. Dhakal, 2005. Thermal Regime of a Headwater Stream Within a Clear-Cut, Coastal British Columbia, Canada. Hydrological Processes (published online April 19, 2005), doi: 10.1002/hyp.5733.

Nielsen, J.L., T.E. Lisle and V. Ozaki, 1994. Thermally Stratified Pools and Their Use by Steelhead in Northern California

Streams. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 121:613-626.

Oke, T.R., 1987. Boundary Layer Climates (Second Edition). Halsted Press, London, United Kingdom.

Örlander, G. and O. Langvall, 1993. The ASA Shuttle – A System for Mobile Sampling of Air Temperature and Radiation. Scandinavian Journal of Forest Research 8:359-372.

Pluhowski, E. J., 1972. Clear-Cutting and Its Effect on the Water Temperature of a Small Stream in Northern Virginia. U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 800-C, pp. C257-C262.

Polehn, R.A. and W.C. Kinsel, 2000. Transient Temperature Solution for a River With Distributed Inflows. Water Resources Research 36:787-791.

Pomeroy, J.W. and B.E. Goodison, 1997. Winter and Snow. *In*: The Surface Climates of Canada, W.G. Bailey, T.R. Oke and W.R. Rouse (Editors). McGill University Press, Kingston, Ontario, Canada, pp. 60-100.

Poole, G.C. and C.H. Berman, 2001. An Ecological Perspective on In-Stream Temperature: Natural Heat Dynamics and Mechanisms of Human-Caused Thermal Degradation. Environmental Management 27:787-802.

Poole, G.C., J. Risley, and M. Hicks, 2001. Spatial and Temporal Patterns of Stream Temperature (Revised). *In:* Issue Paper 3, EPA Region 10, Temperature Water Quality Criteria Guidance Development Project. Report EPA-910-D-01-003. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Seattle, Washington.

Prevost, M., A.P. Plamondon, and P. Belleau, 1999. Effects of Drainage of a Forested Peatland on Water Quality and Quantity. Journal of Hydrology 214:130-143.

Rashin, E. and C. Graber, 1992. Effectiveness of Washington's Forest Practice Riparian Management Zone Regulations for Protection of Stream Temperature. Prepared for Timber/Fish/Wildlife Cooperative Monitoring, Evaluation, and Research Committee, Water Quality Steering Committee. Report No. TFW-WQ6-92-01, Ecology Publication No. 92-64, Washington State Department of Ecology, Olympia, Washington, 59 pp.

Rauner, Yu. L., 1976. Deciduous Forests. *In:* Vegetation and the Atmosphere. Volume 2. Case Studies, J.L. Monteith (Editor). Academic Press, London, United Kingdom, pp. 241-264.

Raynor, G.S., 1971. Wind and Temperature Structure in a Coniferous Forest and Contiguous Field. Forest Science 17:351-363.

Reifsnyder, W.E. and H.W. Lull, 1965. Radiant Energy in Relation to Forests. Technical Bulletin 1344, USDA Forest Service, Washington D.C.

Richardson, J.S., R.J. Naiman, F.J. Swanson, and D.E. Hibbs, 2005. Riparian Communities Associated With Pacific Northwest Headwater Streams: Assemblages, Processes, and Uniqueness. Journal of the American Water Resources Association (JAWRA) 41(4):935-947.

Ringler, N.H. and J.D. Hall, 1975. Effects of Logging on Water Temperature and Dissolved Oxygen in Spawning Beds. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 104:111-121.

Ringold, P.L., J. Van Sickle, K. Rasar and J. Schacher, 2003. Use of Hemispheric Imagery for Estimating Stream Solar Exposure. Journal of the American Water Resources Association 39:1373-1383.

Rishel, G.B., J.A. Lynch, and E.S. Corbett, 1982. Seasonal Stream Temperature Changes Following Forest Harvesting. Journal of Environmental Quality 11:112-116.

Rowe, L.K. and C.H. Taylor, 1994. Hydrology and Related Changes After Harvesting Native Forest Catchments and Establishing *Pinus Radiata* Plantations. Part 3. Stream Temperatures. Hydrological Processes 8:299-310.

Rutherford, J.C., S. Blackett, C. Blackett, L. Saito, and R.J. Davies-Colley, 1997. Predicting the Effects of Shade on Water Temperature in Small Streams. New Zealand Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research 31:707-721.

St.-Hilaire, A., G. Morin, N. El-Jabi, and D. Caissie, 2000. Water Temperature Modelling in a Small Forested Stream: Implication of Forest Canopy and Soil Temperature. Canadian Journal of Civil Engineering 27:1095-1108.

Shepherd, B.G., G.F. Hartman, and W.J. Wilson, 1986. Relationships Between Stream and Intragravel Temperatures in Coastal Drainages, and Some Implications for Fisheries Workers. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 43:1818-1822.

Silliman, S.E. and D.F. Booth, 1993. Analysis of Time-Series Measurements of Sediment Temperature for Identification of Gaining vs. Losing Portions of Juday Creek, Indiana. Journal of Hydrology 146:131-148.

Sinokrot, B.A. and H.G. Stefan, 1993. Stream Temperature Dynamics: Measurements and Modeling. Water Resources Research 29:2299-2312.

Spittlehouse, D.L., 1998. Rainfall Interception in Young and Mature Coastal Conifer Forest. *In:* Mountains to Sea: Human Interaction with the Hydrological Cycle, Y. Alila (Editor). Canadian Water Resources Association, Cambridge, Ontario,Canada, pp. 40-44.

Spittlehouse, D.L., R.S. Adams, and R.D. Winkler, 2004. Forest, Edge, and Opening Microclimate at Sicamous Creek. Research Report 24, Res. Br., British Columbia Ministry of Forests, Victoria, B.C., Canada.

Sridhar, V., A.L. Sansone, J. Lamarche, T. Dubin and D.P. Lettenmaier, 2004. Prediction of Stream Temperature in Forested Watersheds. Journal of the American Water Resources Association (JAWRA) 40(1):197-214.

Storey, R.G. and D.R. Cowley, 1997. Recovery of Three New Zealand Rural Streams as They Pass Through Native Forest Remnants. Hydrobiologia 353:63-76.

Story, A., R.D. Moore, and J.S. Macdonald, 2003. Stream Temperatures in Two Shaded Reaches Below Cut Blocks and Logging Roads: Downstream Cooling Linked to Subsurface Hydrology. Canadian Journal of Forest Research 33:1383-1396.

Stott, T. and S. Marks, 2000. Effects of Plantation Forest Clearfelling on Stream Temperatures in the Plynlimon Experimental Catchments, Mid-Wales. Hydrology and Earth System Science 4:95-104.

Sullivan, K., J. Tooley, J.E. Caldwell, and P. Knudsen, 1990. Evaluation of Prediction Models and Characterization of Stream Temperature Regimes in Washington. Timber/Fish/Wildlife Report No. TFW-WQ3-90-006, Washington Department of Natural Resources, Olympia, Washington, 224 pp.

Swift, L.W. and J.B. Messer, 1971. Forest Cuttings Raise Temperatures of Small Streams in the Southern Appalachians. Journal of Soil and Water Conservation 26:111-116.

Teti, P., 2001. A New Instrument for Measuring Shade Provided by Overhead Vegetation. Cariboo Forest Region Research Section Extension Note No. 34, British Columbia Ministry of Forests, Cariboo Forest Region, Williams Lake, British Columbia, Canada.

Torgersen, C.E., R.N. Faux, B.A. McIntosh, N.J. Poage, and D.J. Norton, 2001. Airborne Thermal Remote Sensing for Water Temperature Assessment in Rivers and Streams. Remote Sensing of Environment 76:386-398.

Torgersen, C.E., D.M. Price, H.W. Li, and B.A. McIntosh, 1999. Multiscale Thermal Refugia and Stream Habitat Associates of Chinook Salmon in Northeastern Oregon. Ecological Applications 9:301-319.

Vannote, R.L., G.W. Minshall, K.W. Cummins, J.R. Sedell, and C.E. Cushing, 1980. The River Continuum Concept. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 37:130-137.

Vannote, R.L. and B.W. Sweeney, 1980. Geographic Analysis of Thermal Equilibria: A Conceptual Model for Evaluating the Effect of Natural and Modified Thermal Regimes on Aquatic Insect Communities. The American Naturalist 115:667-695.

Vezina, P.E. and D.K.W. Boulter, 1966. The Spectral Composition of Near Ultraviolet and Visible Radiation Beneath Forest Canopies. Canadian Journal of Botany 44:1267-1284.

Vezina, P.E. and G.Y. Pech, 1964. Solar Radiation Beneath Conifer Canopies in Relation to Crown Closure. Forest Science 10:443-451.

Ward, J.V. and J.A. Stanford, 1983. The Serial Discontinuity Concept of Lotic Ecosystems. *In:* Dynamics of Lotic Ecosystems, T.D. Fontaine and S.M. Bartell (Editors). Ann Arbor Science, Ann Arbor, Michigan, pp. 29-42.

Ward, J.V. and J.A. Stanford, 1982. Thermal Responses in the Evolutionary Ecology of Aquatic Insects. Annual Reviews of Entomology 27:97-117.

Webb, B.W. and Y. Zhang, 1997. Spatial and Temporal Variability in the Components of the River Heat Budget. Hydrological Processes 11:79-101.

Webb, B.W. and Y. Zhang, 1999. Water Temperatures and Heat Budgets in Dorset Chalk Water Courses. Hydrological Processes 13:309-321.

White, D.S., C.H. Elzinga and S.P. Hendricks, 1987. Temperature Patterns Within the Hyporheic Zone of a Northern Michigan River. Journal of the North American Benthological Society 6:85-91.

Winkler, R.D., D.L. Spittlehouse, B.A. Heise, T.R. Giles, and Y. Alila, 2003. The Upper Penticton Creek Watershed Experiment: A Review at Year 20. *In:* Water Stewardship: How Are We Managing? Canadian Water Resources Association, Cambridge, Ontario, Canada, pp. 81-88.

Wipfli, M.S. and D.P. Gregovich, 2002. Export of Invertebrates and Detritus From Fishless Headwater Streams in Southeastern Alaska: Implications for Downstream Salmonid Production. Freshwater Biology 47:957-969.

Yang, X., D.R. Miller, and M.E. Montgomery, 1993. Vertical Distributions of Canopy Foliage and Biologically Active Radiation in a Defoliated/Refoliated Hardwood Forest. Agricultural and Forest Meteorology 67:129-146.

Young, A. and N. Mitchell, 1994. Microclimate and Vegetation Edge Effects in a Fragmented Podocarp-broadleaf Forest in New Zealand. Biological Conservation 67:63-72.

Young, K.A. 2000. Riparian Zone Management in the Pacific Northwest: Who's Cutting What? Environmental Management 26:131-144.

Zwieniecki, M.A. and M. Newton, 1999. Influence of Streamside Cover and Stream Features on Temperature Trends in Forested Streams of Western Oregon. Western Journal of Applied Forestry 14:106-113.

## *Literature Cited in Moore, Spittlehouse and Story (2005)*


Adams, P.W., A.L. Flint, and R.L Fredriksen, 1991. Long-Term Patterns in Soil Moisture and Revegetation After a Clearcut of a Douglas-Fir Forest in Oregon. Forest Ecology Management 41:249-263.

Adams, T.N. and K. Sullivan. 1989. The Physics of Forest Stream Heating: A Simple Model. TFW-WQ3-90-007, Washington Department of Natural Resources, Olympia, Washington, 30 pp.+ 9 figures. *Available at* http://www.dnr.wa.gov/forestpractices/ adaptivemanagement/cmer/publications/TFW_WQ3_90_007.pdf.

Alexander, M.D. and D. Caissie, 2003. Variability and Comparison of Hyporheic Water Temperatures and Seepage Fluxes in a Small Atlantic Salmon Stream. Ground Water 41:72-82.

Alexander, M.D., K.T.B. MacQuarrie, D. Caissie, and K.D. Butler, 2003. The Thermal Regime of Shallow Groundwater and a Small Atlantic Salmon Stream Bordering a Clearcut with a Forested Streamside Buffer. *In:* Proceedings, Annual Conference of the Canadian Society for Civil Engineering, Moncton, New Brunswick. Canadian Society for Civil Engineering, Montreal, Quebec, Canada, pp. GCL 343-1-10.

Arscott, D.B., K. Tockner, and J.V. Ward, 2001. Thermal Heterogeneity Along a Braided Floodplain River (Tagliamento River, Northeastern Italy). Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 58:2359-2373.

Atzet, T. and R.H. Waring, 1970. Selective Filtering of Light by Coniferous Forests and Minimum Light Energy Requirements for Regeneration. Canadian Journal of Botany 48:2136-2167.

Bartholow, J.M. 1989. Stream Temperature Investigations: Field and Analytic Methods. Instream Flow Information Paper No. 13, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Report 89 (17), Washington, D.C., 139 pp.

Bartholow, J.M., 1991. A Modeling Assessment of the Thermal Regime for an Urban Sport Fishery. Environmental Management 15(6):833-845.

Bartholow, J.M., 2000, Estimating Cumulative Effects of Clearcutting on Stream Temperatures. Rivers 7(4):284-297.

Benner, D.A. and R.L. Beschta, 2000. Effects of Channel Morphology on Evaporative Heat Loss From Arid-Land Streams. *In:* Proceedings of the International Conference on Riparian Ecology and Management in Multi-Land Use Watersheds, P.J. Wigington, Jr., and R.L. Beschta (Editors). American Water Resources Association, TPS-00-2, pp. 47-52.

Beschta, R.L., 1997. Riparian Shade and Stream Temperature: An Alternative Perspective. Rangelands 19:25-28.

Beschta, R.L., R.E. Bilby, G.W. Brown, L.B. Holtby, and T. D. Hofstra, 1987. Stream Temperature and Aquatic Habitat: Fisheries and Forestry Interactions. In: Streamside Management: Forestry and Fishery Interactions, E.O Salo and T. W. Cundy (Editors). University of Washington, Institute of Forest Resources, Contribution No. 57, Seattle, Washington, pp. 191-232.

Beschta, R.L. and R.L. Taylor, 1988. Stream Temperature Increases and Land Use in a Forested Oregon Watershed. Water Resources Bulletin 24:19-25.

Beschta, R.L. and J. Weatherred, 1984. TEMP-84. A Computer Model for Predicting Stream Temperatures Resulting From the Management of Streamside Vegetation. Watershed Systems Development Group, Ft. Collins, Colorado. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, D.C., WSDG-AD-00009.

Bilby, R.E., 1984. Characteristics and Frequency of Cool-Water Areas in a Western Washington Stream. Journal of Freshwater Ecology 2:593-602.

Black, T.A., J.-M. Chen, X. Lee, and R.M. Sagar, 1991. Characteristics of Shortwave and Longwave Irradiances Under a Douglas-Fir Forest Stand. Canadian Journal of Forest Research 21:1020-1028.

Bogan, T., O. Mohseni, and H.G. Stefan, 2003. Stream Temperature- Equilibrium Temperature Relationship. Water Resources Research 39:1245, doi:10.1029/2003WR002034.

Bourque, C.P.-A. and J.H. Pomeroy, 2001. Effects of Forest Harvesting on Summer Stream Temperatures in New Brunswick, Canada: An Inter-Catchment, Multiple-Year Comparison. Hydrology and Earth Systems Science 5:599-613.

Boyd, M., 1996. Heat Source: Steam Temperature Prediction Model. Master's Thesis, Departments of Civil and Bioresource Engineering, Oregon State University, Corvallis, Oregon.

Brazier, J.R. and G.W. Brown, 1973. Buffer Strips for Stream Temperature Control. Oregon State Forest Research Laboratory Paper 15, Oregon State University, Corvallis, Oregon, 9 pp.

Brosofske, K.D., J. Chen, R.J. Naiman, and J.F. Franklin, 1997. Harvesting Effects on Microclimatic Gradients From Small Streams to Uplands in Western Washington. Ecological Applications 7:1188-1200.

Brown, G.W., 1969. Predicting Temperatures of Small Streams. Water Resources Research 5:68-75.

Brown, G.W., 1972. An Improved Temperature Prediction Model for Small Streams. Report WRRI-16, Water Resources Research Institute, Department of Forest Engineering, Oregon State University, Corvallis, Oregon, 20 pp.

Brown, G.W., 1985. Water Temperature. *In:* Forestry and Water Quality (Second Edition). Oregon State University Press, Corvallis, Oregon, Chapter III, pp. 47-57.

Brown, G.W. and J.T. Krygier, 1970. Effects of Clear-Cutting on Stream Temperature. Water Resources Research 6:1133-1139.

Brown, G.W., G.W. Swank, and J. Rothacher, 1971. Water Temperature in the Steamboat Drainage. Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experimental Station Research Paper PNW-119, US Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Portland, Oregon.

Brownlee, M.J., B.G. Shepherd, and D.R. Bustard, 1988. Some Effects of Forest Management on Water Quality in the Slim Creek Watershed in the Central Interior of British Columbia. Canadian Technical Reports on Fisheries and Aquatic Science 1613, Canada

Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada, 41 pp.

Cadenasso, M.L., M.M. Traynor, and S.T.A. Pickett, 1997. Functional Location of Forest Edges: Gradients of Multiple Physical Factors. Canadian Journal of Forest Research 27:774-782.

Calder, I.R., 1990. Evaporation in the Uplands. John Wiley and Sons, New York, New York.

Caldwell, J.E., K. Doughty, and K. Sullivan, 1991. Evaluation of Downstream Temperature Effects of Type 4/5 Waters. T/F/W Report No. WQ5-91-004, T/F/W CMER Water Quality Steering Committee and Washington Department of Natural Resources, Olympia, Washington.

Chen, J., J.F. Franklin, and T.A. Spies, 1993a. Contrasting Microclimates Among Clearcut, Edge, and Interior of Old-Growth Douglas- Fir Forest. Agricultural and Forest Meteorology 63:219-237.

Chen, J., J.F. Franklin, and T.A. Spies, 1993b. An Empirica1 Model for Predicting Diurnal Air-Temperature Gradients From Edge Into Old-Growth Douglas-Fir Forest. Ecological Modeling 61:179-198.

Chen, J., J.F. Franklin, and T.A. Spies, 1995. Growing-Season Microclimatic Gradients From Clearcut Edges Into Old-Growth Douglas-Fir Forests. Ecological Applications 5:74-86.

Chen, J., S.C. Saunders, T.R. Crow, R.J. Naiman, K.D. Brosofske, G.D. Mroz, B.L., Brookshire, and J.F. Franklin, 1999. Microclimate in Forest Ecosystem and Landscape Ecology. BioScience 49:288-297.

Chen, Y.D., R.F. Carsel, S.C. McCutcheon, and W.L. Nutter, 1998a. Stream Temperature Simulation of Riparian Areas: I. Watershed-Scale Model Development. Journal of Environmental Engineering 124:304-315.

Chen, Y.D., S.C. McCutcheon, D.J. Norton, and W.L. Nutter, 1998b. Stream Temperature Simulation of Riparian Areas: II. Model Application. Journal of Environmental Engineering 124:316-328.

Constantz, J., 1998. Interaction Between Stream Temperature, Streamflow, and Ground water Exchanges in Alpine Streams. Water Resources Research 34:1609-1615.

Crisp. D.T., 1990. Water Temperature in a Stream Gravel Bed and Implications for Salmonid Incubation. Freshwater Biology 23:601-612.

Curry, R.A., D.A Scruton, and K.D. Clarke, 2002. The Thermal Regimes of Brook Trout Incubation Habitats and Evidence of Changes During Forestry Operations. Canadian Journal of Forest Research 32:1200-1207.

Danehy, R.J. and B.J. Kirpes, 2000. Relative Humidity Gradients Across Riparian Areas in Eastern Oregon and Washington Forests. Northwest Science 74:224-233.

Davies-Colley, R.J. and G.W. Payne, 1998. Measuring Stream Shade. Journal of the North American Benthological Society 17:250-260.

Davies-Colley R.J., G.W. Payne, and M. van Elswijk, 2000. Microclimate Gradients Across a Forest Edge. New Zealand Journal of Ecology 24:111-121.

Dignan, P. and L. Bren, 2003. Modelling Light Penetration Edge Effects For Stream Buffer Design in Mountain Ash Forest in Southeastern Australia. Forest Ecology and Management 179:95-106.

Ebersole, J.L., W.J. Liss, and C.A. Frissel, 2003. Cold Water Patches in Warm Streams: Physicochemical Characteristics and the Influence of Shading. Journal of the American Water Resources Association (JAWRA) 39:355-368.

Edinger, J.E., D.W. Duttweiler, and J.C. Geyer, 1968. The Response of Water Temperatures to Meteorological Conditions. Water Resources Research 4:1137-1143.

Englund, S.R., J.J. O'Brien, and D.B. Clark, 2000. Evaluation of Digital and Film Hemispherical Photography and Spherical Densiometry for Measuring Forest Light Environments. Canadian Journal of Forest Research 30:1999-2005.

Evans, E.C., G.R. McGregor, and G.E. Petts, 1998. River Energy Budgets With Special Reference to River Bed Processes. Hydrological Processes 12:575-595.

FAO (Food and Agriculture Organization), 1962. Forest Influences. Forestry and Forest Product Studies No. 15, Food and Agriculture Organization, United Nations, Rome, Italy.

Federer, C.A., 1971. Solar Radiation Absorption by Leafless Hardwood Forests. Agricultural Meteorology 9:3-20.

Federer, C.A. and C.B. Tanner, 1966. Spectral Distribution of Light in Forests. Ecology 47:555-560.

Feller, M.C. 1981. Effects of Clearcutting and Slashburning on Stream Temperature in Southwestern British Columbia. Water Resources Bulletin 17:863-867.

Frazer, G.W., C.D. Canham, and K.P. Lertzman, 1999. Gap Light Analyser (GLA). Version 2.0: Imaging Software to Extract Canopy Structure and Gap Light Transmission Indices From True-Colour Fisheye Photographs. Users Manual and Program Documentation, Simon Fraser University, Burnaby, B.C. and the Institute of Ecosystem Studies, Millbrook, New York.

Geiger, R., R.H. Aron, and P. Todhunter, 1995. The Climate Near the Ground (5th Edition). Vieweg, Weisbaden, Germany. Greene, G.E., 1950. Land Use and Trout Streams. Journal of Soil Water Conservations 5:125-126.

Gulliver, J.S. and H.G. Stefan, 1986. Wind Function for a Sheltered Stream. Journal of Environmental Engineering 112:387-399.

Hagan, J.M. and A.A. Whitman, 2000. Microclimate Changes Across Upland and Riparian Clearcut-Forest Boundaries in Maine. *In:* Mosaic Science Notes 2000-4. Manomet Center for Conservation Sciences, Manomet, Maine, 6 pp. *Available at* http://www.manometmaine.com/pdf/MSN2000-4.pdf . *Accessed on* June 15, 2005.

Harr, R.D. and R.L. Fredriksen, 1988. Water Quality After Logging Small Watersheds Within the Bull Run Watershed, Oregon. Water Resources Bulletin 24(5):1103-1111. Harris, D.D., 1977. Hydrologic Changes After Logging in Two Small Oregon Coastal Watersheds. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 2037. U.S. Geological Survey, Washington, D.C., 31 pp. Hartman, G.F. and J.C.

Scrivener, 1990. Impacts of Forestry Practices on a Coastal Stream Ecosystem, Carnation Creek, British Columbia. Canadian Bulletin of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 223, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada, 148 pp.

Harvey, J.W. and K.E. Bencala, 1993. The Effect of Streambed Topography on Surface-Subsurface Water Exchange in Mountain Catchments. Water Resources Research 29:89-98.

Herunter, H.E., J.S. Macdonald, and E.A. MacIsaac, 2003. Influence of Logging Road Right-of-Way Size on Small Stream Water Temperature and Sediment Infiltration in the Interior of B.C. *In:* Forestry Impacts on Fish Habitat in the Northern Interior of British Columbia: A Compendium of Research From the Stuart- Takla Fish-Forestry Interaction Study, E. MacIsaac (Editor). Canadian Technical Report on Fisheries and Aquatic Science 2509, Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Vancouver, British, Columbia, Canada. pp. 129-143.

Hetherington, E.D., 1987. The Importance of Forests in the Hydrological Regime. *In:* Canadian Aquatic Resources, M.C. Healy and R.R. Wallace (Editors.). Canadian Bulletin of Fisheries and Aquatic 215, Canada Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Ottawa, Canada, pp.179-211.

Hewlett, J.D. and J.C. Fortson, 1982. Stream Temperature Under an Inadequate Buffer Strip in the Southeast Piedmont. Water Resources Bulletin 18:983-988.

Holtby, B. and C.P. Newcombe, 1982. A Preliminary Analysis of Logging-Related Temperature Changes in Carnation Creek, British Columbia. *In:* Proceedings of the Carnation Creek Workshop: A 10 year Review, G.F. Hartman (Editor). Canada Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Pacific Biological Station, Nanaimo, British Columbia, Canada, pp. 81-99.

Ice, G.G., J. Light, and M. Reiter, 2004. Use of Natural Temperature Patterns to Identify Achievable Stream Temperature Criteria for Forest Streams. Western Journal of Applied Forestry 19:252-259.

Jackson, C.R., C.A. Sturm and J.M. Ward, 2001. Timber Harvest Impacts on Small Headwater Stream Channels in the Coast Ranges of Washington. Journal of the American Water Resources Association (JAWRA) 37:1533-1549.

Jarvis, P.G., G.B. James, and J.J. Landsberg, 1976. Coniferous Forests. *In:* Vegetation and the Atmosphere. Volume 2. Case Studies, J.L. Monteith (Editor). Academic Press, London, United Kingdom, pp. 171-240.

Johnson, S.L., 2004. Factors Influencing Stream Temperatures in Small Streams: Substrate Effects and a Shading Experiment. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 61:913-923

Johnson, S.L. and J.A. Jones, 2000. Stream Temperature Responses to Forest Harvest and Debris Flows in Western Cascades, Oregon. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 57(Suppl. 2):30-39.

Kasahara, T. and S.M. Wondzell, 2003. Geomorphic Controls on Hyporheic Exchange Flow in Mountain Streams. Water Resources Research 39(1),1005 pp., doi:10.1029/2002WR001386.

Keith, R.M., T.C. Bjornn, W.R. Meehan, N.J. Hetrick, and M.A. Brusven, 1998. Response of

Juvenile Salmonids to Riparian and Instream Cover Modifications in Small Streams Flowing Through Second-Growth Forests of Southeast Alaska. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 127:889-907.

Larson, L.L. and S.L. Larson, 1996. Riparian Shade and Stream Temperature: A Perspective. Rangelands 18:149-152.

Ledwith, T., 1996. The Effects of Buffer Strip Width on Air Temperature and Relative Humidity in a Stream Riparian Zone. Networker 6(5), The Watershed Management Council. *Available at* http://www.watershed.org/news/sum_96/buffer.html. *Accessed in* June 2005.

Lynch, J.A., G.B. Rishel and E.S. Corbett, 1984. Thermal Alteration of Streams Draining Clearcut Watersheds: Quantification and Biological Implications. Hydrobiologia 111:161-169.

Macdonald, J.S., H. Herunter, and R.D. Moore, 2003a. Temperatures in Aquatic Habitats: The Impacts of Forest Harvesting in the Interior of B.C. *In:* Forestry Impacts on Fish Habitat in the Northern Interior of British Columbia: A Compendium of Research From the Stuart-Takla Fish-Forestry Interaction Study, E. MacIsaac (Editor). Canadian Technical Report on Fisheries and Aquatic Science 2509, Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada, pp. 101-116.

Macdonald, J.S., E.A. MacIsaac, and H.E. Herunter, 2003b. The Effect of Variable-Retention Riparian Buffers on Water Temperatures in Small Headwater Streams in Sub-Boreal Forest Ecosystems of British Columbia. Canadian Journal of Forest Research 33:1371-1382.

Malard, F., A. Mangin, U. Uehlinger, and J.V. Ward, 2001. Thermal Heterogeneity in the Hyporheic Zone of a Glacial Floodplain. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 58:1319-1335.

Malard, F., K. Tockner, M.J. Dole-Olivier, and J.V. Ward, 2002. A Landscape Perspective of Surface-Subsurface Hydrological Exchanges in River Corridors. Freshwater Biology 47:621-640.

Malcolm, I.A., C. Soulsby, and A.F. Youngson, 2002. Thermal Regime in the Hyporheic Zone of Two Contrasting Salmonid Spawning Streams: Ecological and Hydrological Implications. Fisheries Management and Ecology 9:1-10.

Mattax, B.L. and T.M. Quigley, 1989. Validation and Sensitivity Analysis of the Stream Network Temperature Model on Small Watersheds in Northeast Oregon. *In:* Headwaters Hydrology, W. Woessner and D. Potts (Editors). American Water Resources Association, pp. 391-398.

McCaughey, J.H., B.D. Amiro, A.W. Robertson, and D.L. Spittlehouse, 1997. Forest Environments. *In*: The Surface Climates of Canada, W.G. Bailey, T.R. Oke and W.R. Rouse (Editors.). McGill University Press, Kingston, Ontario, Canada, pp. 247-276.

McGurk, B.J., 1989. Predicting Stream Temperature After Riparian Vegetation Removal. *In:* Proceedings of the California Riparian Systems Conference. USDA Forest Service General Technical Report PSW-110, Davis, California, pp. 157-164.

Mellina, E., D. Moore, P. Beaudry, S. Macdonald, S.G. Hinch, and G. Pearson, 2002. Effects of Forest Harvesting on Stream Temperatures in the Central Interior of British Columbia:

The Moderating Influence of Groundwater and Lakes. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 59:1886-1900.

Mitchell, S., 1999. A Simple Model for Estimating Mean Monthly Stream Temperatures after Riparian Canopy Removal. Environmental Management 24:77-83.

Mohseni, O., T.R. Erickson, and H.G. Stefan, 2002. Upper Bounds for Stream Temperatures in the Contiguous United States. Journal of Environmental Engineering 128:4-11.

Moore, R.D., P. Sutherland, T. Gomi, and A. Dhakal, 2005. Thermal Regime of a Headwater Stream Within a Clear-Cut, Coastal British Columbia, Canada. Hydrological Processes (published online April 19, 2005), doi: 10.1002/hyp.5733.

Nielsen, J.L., T.E. Lisle and V. Ozaki, 1994. Thermally Stratified Pools and Their Use by Steelhead in Northern California Streams. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 123:613-626.

Oke, T.R., 1987. Boundary Layer Climates (Second Edition). Halsted Press, London, United Kingdom.

Örlander, G. and O. Langvall, 1993. The ASA Shuttle – A System for Mobile Sampling of Air Temperature and Radiation. Scandinavian Journal of Forest Research 8:359-372.

Pluhowski, E. J., 1972. Clear-Cutting and Its Effect on the Water Temperature of a Small Stream in Northern Virginia. U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 800-C, pp. C257-C262.

Polehn, R.A. and W.C. Kinsel, 2000. Transient Temperature Solution for a River With Distributed Inflows. Water Resources Research 36:787-791.

Pomeroy, J.W. and B.E. Goodison, 1997. Winter and Snow. *In:* The Surface Climates of Canada, W.G. Bailey, T.R. Oke and W.R. Rouse (Editors). McGill University Press, Kingston, Ontario, Canada, pp. 60-100.

Poole, G.C. and C.H. Berman, 2001. An Ecological Perspective on In-Stream Temperature: Natural Heat Dynamics and Mechanisms of Human-Caused Thermal Degradation. Environmental Management 27:787-802.

Poole, G.C., J. Risley, and M. Hicks, 2001. Spatial and Temporal Patterns of Stream Temperature (Revised). *In:* Issue Paper 3, EPA Region 10, Temperature Water Quality Criteria Guidance Development Project. Report EPA-910-D-01-003. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Seattle, Washington.

Prevost, M., A.P. Plamondon, and P. Belleau, 1999. Effects of Drainage of a Forested Peatland on Water Quality and Quantity. Journal of Hydrology 214:130-143.

Rashin, E. and C. Graber, 1992. Effectiveness of Washington's Forest Practice Riparian Management Zone Regulations for Protection of Stream Temperature. Prepared for Timber/Fish/Wildlife Cooperative Monitoring, Evaluation, and Research Committee, Water Quality Steering Committee. Report No. TFW-WQ6-92- 01, Ecology Publication No. 92-64, Washington State Department of Ecology, Olympia, Washington, 59 pp.

Rauner, Yu L., 1976. Deciduous Forests. *In:* Vegetation and the Atmosphere. Volume 2. Case Studies, J.L. Monteith (Editor). Academic Press, London, United Kingdom, pp. 241-264.

Raynor, G.S., 1971. Wind and Temperature Structure in a Coniferous Forest and Contiguous Field. Forest Science 17:351-363.

Reifsnyder, W.E. and H.W. Lull, 1965. Radiant Energy in Relation to Forests. Technical Bulletin 1344, USDA Forest Service, Washington D.C.

Richardson, J.S., R.J. Naiman, F.J. Swanson, and D.E. Hibbs, 2005. Riparian Communities Associated With Pacific Northwest Headwater Streams: Assemblages, Processes, and Uniqueness. Journal of the American Water Resources Association (JAWRA) 41(4):935-947.

Ringler, N.H. and J.D. Hall, 1975. Effects of Logging on Water Temperature and Dissolved Oxygen in Spawning Beds. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 104:111-121.

Ringold, P.L., J. Van Sickle, K. Rasar and J. Schacher, 2003. Use of Hemispheric Imagery for Estimating Stream Solar Exposure. Journal of the American Water Resources Association 39:1373-1383.

Rishel, G.B., J.A. Lynch, and E.S. Corbett, 1982. Seasonal Stream Temperature Changes Following Forest Harvesting. Journal of Environmental Quality 11:112-116.

Rowe, L.K. and C.H. Taylor, 1994. Hydrology and Related Changes After Harvesting Native Forest Catchments and Establishing *Pinus Radiata* Plantations. Part 3. Stream Temperatures. Hydrological Processes 8:299-310.

Rutherford, J.C., S. Blackett, C. Blackett, L. Saito, and R.J. Davies-Colley, 1997. Predicting the Effects of Shade on Water Temperature in Small Streams. New Zealand Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research 31:707-721.

St.-Hilaire, A., G. Morin, N. El-Jabi, and D. Caissie, 2000. Water Temperature Modelling in a Small Forested Stream: Implication of Forest Canopy and Soil Temperature. Canadian Journal of Civil Engineering 27:1095-1108.

Shepherd, B.G., G.F. Hartman, and W.J. Wilson, 1986. Relationships Between Stream and Intragravel Temperatures in Coastal Drainages, and Some Implications for Fisheries Workers. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 43:1818-1822.

Silliman, S.E. and D.F. Booth, 1993. Analysis of Time-Series Measurements of Sediment Temperature for Identification of Gaining vs. Losing Portions of Juday Creek, Indiana. Journal of Hydrology 146:131-148.

Sinokrot, B.A. and H.G. Stefan, 1993. Stream Temperature Dynamics: Measurements and Modeling. Water Resources Research 29:2299-2312.

Spittlehouse, D.L., 1998. Rainfall Interception in Young and Mature Coastal Conifer Forest. *In:* Mountains to Sea: Human Interaction with the Hydrological Cycle, Y. Alila (Editor). Canadian Water Resources Association, Cambridge, Ontario,Canada, pp. 40-44.

Spittlehouse, D.L., R.S. Adams, and R.D. Winkler, 2004. Forest, Edge, and Opening Microclimate at Sicamous Creek. Research Report 24, Res. Br., British Columbia Ministry of Forests, Victoria, B.C., Canada.

Sridhar, V., A.L. Sansone, J. Lamarche, T. Dubin and D.P. Lettenmaier, 2004. Prediction of

Stream Temperature in Forested Watersheds. Journal of the American Water Resources Association (JAWRA) 40(1):197-214.

Storey, R.G. and D.R. Cowley, 1997. Recovery of Three New Zealand Rural Streams as They Pass Through Native Forest Remnants. Hydrobiologia 353:63-76.

Story, A., R.D. Moore, and J.S. Macdonald, 2003. Stream Temperatures in Two Shaded Reaches Below Cut Blocks and Logging Roads: Downstream Cooling Linked to Subsurface Hydrology. Canadian Journal of Forest Research 33:1383-1396.

Stott, T. and S. Marks, 2000. Effects of Plantation Forest Clearfelling on Stream Temperatures in the Plymlimon Experimental Catchments, Mid-Wales. Hydrology and Earth System Science 4:95-104.

Sullivan, K., J. Tooley, J.E. Caldwell, and P. Knudsen, 1990. Evaluation of Prediction Models and Characterization of Stream Temperature Regimes in Washington. Timber/Fish/Wildlife Report No. TFW-WQ3-90-006, Washington Department of Natural Resources, Olympia, Washington, 224 pp.

Swift, L.W. and J.B. Messer, 1971. Forest Cuttings Raise Temperatures of Small Streams in the Southern Appalachians. Journal of Soil and Water Conservation 26:111-116.

Teti, P., 2001. A New Instrument for Measuring Shade Provided by Overhead Vegetation. Cariboo Forest Region Research Section Extension Note No. 34, British Columbia Ministry of Forests, Cariboo Forest Region, Williams Lake, British Columbia, Canada.

Torgerson, C.E., R.N. Faux, B.A. McIntosh, N.J. Poage, and D.J. Norton, 2001. Airborne Thermal Remote Sensing for Water Temperature Assessment in Rivers and Streams. Remote Sensing of Environment 76:386-398.

Torgerson, C.E., D.M. Price, H.W. Li, and B.A. McIntosh, 1999. Multiscale Thermal Refugia and Stream Habitat Associates of Chinook Salmon in Northeastern Oregon. Ecological Applications 9:301-319.

Vannote, R.L., G.W. Minshall, K.W. Cummins, J.R. Sedell, and C.E. Cushing, 1980. The River Continuum Concept. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 37:130-137.

Vannote, R.L. and B.W. Sweeney, 1980. Geographic Analysis of Thermal Equilibria: A Conceptual Model for Evaluating the

Effect of Natural and Modified Thermal Regimes on Aquatic Insect Communities. The American Naturalist 115:667-695.

Vézina, P.E. and D.K.W. Boulter, 1966. The Spectral Composition of Near Ultraviolet and Visible Radiation Beneath Forest Canopies. Canadian Journal of Botany 44:1267-1284.

Vézina, P.E. and G.Y. Pech, 1964. Solar Radiation Beneath Conifer Canopies in Relation to Crown Closure. Forest Science 10:443-451.

Ward, J.V. and J.A. Stanford, 1983. The Serial Discontinuity Concept of Lotic Ecosystems. *In:* Dynamics of Lotic Ecosystems, T.D. Fontaine and S.M. Bartell (Editors). Ann Arbor Science, Ann Arbor, Michigan, pp. 29-42. Ward, J.V. and J.A. Stanford, 1992. Thermal Responses in the Evolutionary Ecology of Aquatic Insects. Annual Reviews of

Entomology 27:97-117.

Webb, B.W. and Y. Zhang, 1997. Spatial and Temporal Variability in the Components of the River Heat Budget. Hydrological Processes 11:79-101.

Webb, B.W. and Y. Zhang, 1999. Water Temperatures and Heat Budgets in Dorset Chalk Water Courses. Hydrological Processes 13:309-321.

White, D.S., C.H. Elzinga and S.P. Hendricks, 1987. Temperature Patterns Within the Hyporheic Zone of a Northern Michigan River. Journal of the North American Benthological Society 6:85-91.

Winkler, R.D., D.L. Spittlehouse, B.A. Heise, T.R. Giles, and Y. Alila, 2003. The Upper Penticton Creek Watershed Experiment: A Review at Year 20. *In:* Water Stewardship: How Are We Managing? Canadian Water Resources Association, Cambridge, Ontario, Canada, pp. 51-58.

Wipfli, M.S. and D.P. Gregovich, 2002. Export of Invertebrates and Detritus From Fishless Headwater Streams in Southeastern Alaska: Implications for Downstream Salmonid Production. Freshwater Biology 47:957-969.

Yang, X., D.R. Miller, and M.E. Montgomery, 1993. Vertical Distributions of Canopy Foliage and Biologically Active Radiation in a Defoliated/Refoliated Hardwood Forest. Agricultural and Forest Meteorology 67:129-146.

Young, A. and N. Mitchell, 1994. Microclimate and Vegetation Edge Effects in a Fragmented Podocarp-broadleaf Forest in New Zealand. Biological Conservation 67:63-72.

Young, K.A. 2000. Riparian Zone Management in the Pacific Northwest: Who's Cutting What? Environmental Management 26:131- 144.

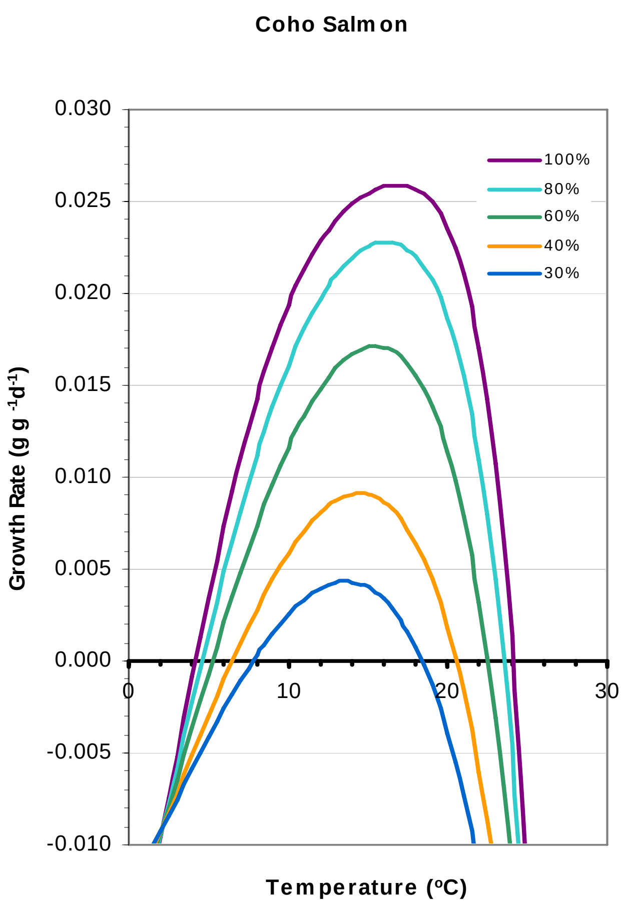
Zwieniecki, M.A. and M. Newton, 1999. Influence of Streamside Cover and Stream Features on Temperature Trends in Forested Streams of Western Oregon. Western Journal of Applied Forestry 14:106-113.

# TAC Primer on The Physiological Basis For Salmonid Temperature Response and Watershed Pattern of Use

## *The Physiological Basis for Salmonid Temperature Response*

Water temperature is a dominant factor affecting aquatic life within the stream environment (Hynes 1970). Water temperature affects important stream functions such as processing rates of organic matter, chemical reactions, metabolic rates of macro-invertebrates, and cues for life-cycle events (Sweeney and Vannote 1986). Water temperature plays a role in virtually every aspect of fish life, and adverse levels of temperature can affect behavior (e.g. feeding patterns or the timing of migration), growth, and vitality.

**Figure 3. Coho salmon daily growth rate as a function of temperature and daily food ration.**




Water temperature governs the rate of biochemical reactions in fish, influencing all activities by pacing metabolic rate (Frye 1971). Fish are poikilothermic or “cold-blooded”. This means that fish do not respond to environmental temperature by feeling hot or cold. Rather, they respond to temperature by increasing or decreasing the rate of metabolism and activity. Water temperature is the thermostat that controls energy intake and expenditure.

The role of temperature in governing physiologic functions of salmonids has been studied extensively (Brett 1971; Elliott 1981; reviewed in Adams and Breck 1990; Brett 1995, McCullough 1999). The relationship between energetic processes and temperature have been quantified for many fish species with laboratory study. Energetic processes are expressed as functions of activity rate in relation to temperature. The relationships between energy-related functions and temperature follow two general patterns: either the rate increases continuously with rise in temperature (e.g., standard metabolic rate, active heart rate, gastric evacuation), or the response increases with temperature to maximum values at optimum temperatures and then decreases as temperature rises (e.g., growth rate, swimming speed, feeding rate) (Brett 1971, Elliott 1981). Each function operates at an optimal rate at some temperature and less efficiently at other temperatures.

For example, daily growth as a function of temperature is shown in Figure 1. Beginning with the coolest temperatures ($0^{o}$ C), growth increases with temperature up to the optimal due to increasing consumption and food conversion efficiency. At temperatures above the optimal, growth rates decline as consumption declines in response to temperature and metabolic energy costs increase (Brett 1971, Elliott 1981, Weatherly and Gill 1995). Because the shape of growth curves is relatively broad at the maximum, there is little or no negative effect of temperature several degrees above optimum. Some investigators define the optimal temperature as the temperature at which maximum growth occurs, and refer to the range of temperature where growth occurs as "preferred" temperatures (Elliott 1981).

The general form of this relationship is similar for all salmonid species, varying somewhat in the details of growth rates and optimal temperatures. All salmonids have a similar biokinetic range of tolerance, performance, and activity. They are classified as temperate stenotherms (Hokanson 1977) and are grouped in the cold water guild (Magnuson et al. 1979). Significant differences in growth rate and temperature range exist among families of fish (Christie and Regier 1988). Some families grow best in colder temperatures (e.g. char), and many grow better in warmer temperatures (e.g. bass). Differences in the specific growth/temperature relationships among species in large measure explain competitive success of species in various temperature environments.

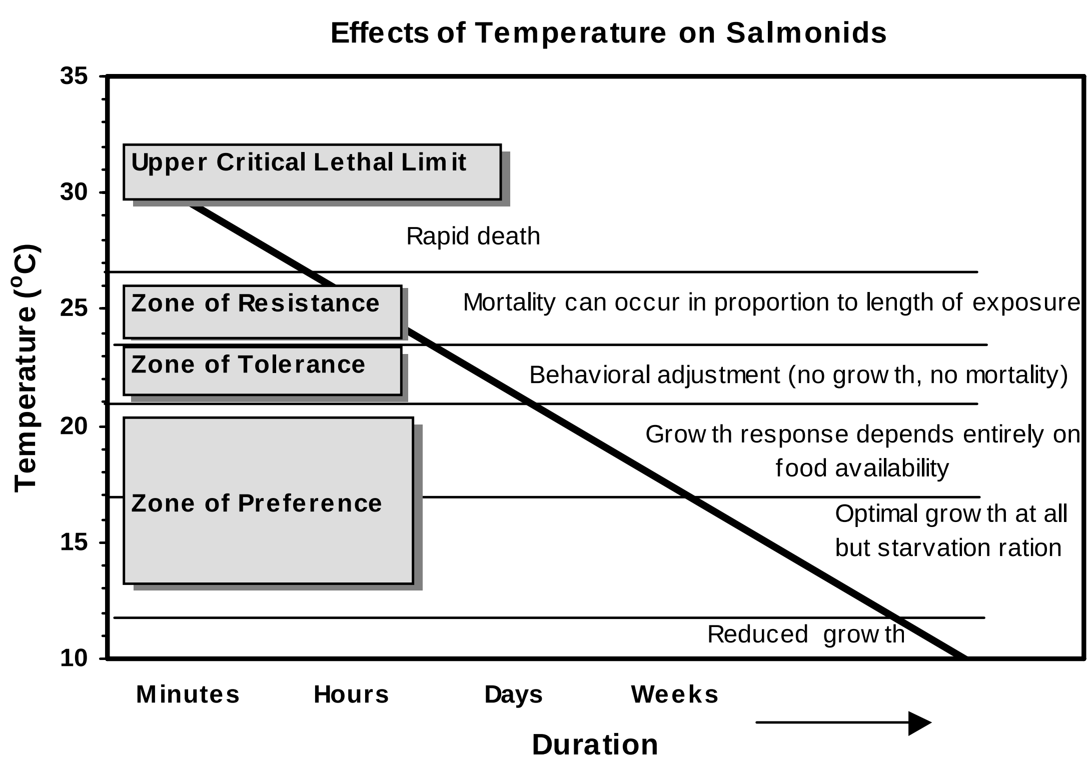
The range of environmental temperature where salmonid life is viable ranges from 0-30 $^{o}$C, with critical temperatures varying somewhat by species. Salmonid physiologic functions operate most effectively in the mid regions of the range where growth is also optimized. Physiological functions are impaired on either end of the temperature range so that the geographic distribution of prevailing high or low temperatures ultimately limits the distribution of the species in the Salmonidae family (Eaton 1995).

The effects of temperature are a function of magnitude and duration of exposure. Figure 2 from Sullivan et al. 2000 summarizes the general relationship of salmonid response to temperature exposure. Salmon species are similar in this pattern, but vary somewhat in the temperatures zones of response.

Exposure to temperatures above 24°C can elicit mortality with sufficient length of exposure. The temperature where death occurs within minutes is termed the ultimate upper incipient lethal limit (UICL). This temperature is between 28- 30°C, varying by salmon species. Clearly, salmon populations are not likely to persist where this temperature occurs for even a few hours on a very few days each year (Eaton 1995). Lethal exposure is defined as up to 96 hours of continuous exposure to a given temperature.

Salmon can tolerate each successively lower temperature for exponentially increasing intervals of time. They do so by altering food consumption and limiting the metabolic rate and scope of activity (Brett 1971, Elliott 1981, Weatherly and Gill 1995). This resistance to the lethal effects of thermal stress enables fish to make excursions for limited times into temperatures that would eventually be lethal (Brett 1956; Elliott 1981). The period of tolerance prior to death is referred to as the "resistance time" (Figure 2) (Hokanson 1977, Jobling 1981). Salmon can extend their temperature tolerance through acclimation. Brett (1956) reported that the rate of increase in ability to tolerate higher temperatures among fish is relatively rapid, requiring less than 24 hours at temperatures above 20°C. Acclimation to low temperatures (less than 5°C) is

**Figure 4. General biological effects of temperature on salmonids in relation to duration and magnitude of temperature (from Sullivan et al. 2000).**



considerably slower.

Laboratory and field studies have repeatedly found that salmon can spend very lengthy periods in temperatures between 22 and 24$^{o}$C without suffering mortality (Brett 1995, Bisson et al. 1988; Martin 1988). Temperatures within this range may be stressful, but are not typically a direct cause of mortality (Brett 1956). Temperatures that cause thermal stress after longer exposures, ranging from weeks to months, are termed chronic temperature effects. Endpoints of lengthy exposure to temperature that are not physiologically optimum may include loss of appetite and failure to gain weight, competitive pressure and displacement by other species better adapted to prevailing temperatures (Reeves et al. 1987), change in behavior, or susceptibility to disease. Werner et al. (2001) documented correlations between stream temperature, size of juvenile steelhead and heat shock protein expression.

Fish may be able to avoid thermal stress by adjusting behavior, such as moving to cooler refugia. Numerous observers have observed behavioral adjustment by seeking cool water refugia when temperature in normal foraging locations reaches 22°C (Donaldson and Foster 1941; Griffiths and Alderdice 1972; Wurtsbaugh and Davis 1977; Lee and Rinne 1980; Bisson et. al. 1988; Nielsen et al. 1994, Tang and Boisclair 1995; Linton et al. 1997; Biro 1998). Fish resume feeding positions when temperatures decline below this threshold. At very low temperatures, salmonids cease feeding and seek cover under banks or within stream gravels (Everest and Chapman 1972).

Less quantifiable in a dose-response context are relationships involving temperature and disease resistance, and temperature effects on sensitivity to toxic chemicals and other stressors. (Cairns et al. 1978). For temperature to affect the occurrence of disease, disease-causing organisms must be present, and either those organisms must be affected by temperature or fish must be in a weakened state due to the effect of temperature. Some disease-causing organisms may be more prevalent at high temperature, others are more prevalent at low temperature, and some are not temperature-related. Thus, the interaction of temperature and disease is best evaluated on a location-specific basis.

If energy intake is adequate to fuel the physiological energy consumption, mediated in large part by the environmental temperature, then the organism can live in a healthy state and grow. Growth is a very important requirement for anadromous salmon living in fresh water. Salmon emerge from gravels in their natal streams measuring approximately 30 mm in length and weighing approximately 0.5 gram. Adults returning to spawn 3 to 5 years later typically measure 500 to 1000 mm in length and weigh from 5 to 20 kg depending on species. This enormous increase in body mass (greater than 5000 times) must be accomplished within a very limited lifespan. Salmon have evolved from a fresh water origin to spend a major portion of life in a marine habitat where there is far greater productivity and where the majority of growth occurs (Brett 1995).

Juvenile salmon must achieve the first six times increase in weight in their natal stream before they can smolt and migrate to the ocean (Weatherly and Gill 1995). Coho and steelhead generally smolt within 1 year, but can require as long as 3 years to achieve sufficient size to begin the transition to salt water. The long-term exposure of salmonids to temperature during their freshwater rearing phase has an important influence on the timing of smoltification and the ultimate size fish achieve (Warren 1971, Brett 1982, Weatherly and Gill 1995, Sullivan et al. 2000).

The size of salmonids during juvenile and adult life stages influences survival and reproductive success (Brett 1995). Larger size generally conveys competitive advantage for feeding (Puckett and Dill 1985, Nielsen 1994) for both resident and anadromous species. Smaller fish tend to be those lost as mortality from rearing populations (Mason 1976; Keith et al. 1998). Larger juveniles entering the winter period have greater over-wintering success (Holtby and Scrivener 1989; and Quinn and Peterson1996). Growth rates can also influence the timing when salmon juveniles reach readiness for smolting. Missing normal migration windows by being too small or too large, or meeting a temperature barrier, may have a negative effect on success in reaching the ocean (Holtby and Scriverner 1989).

How large a salmon can grow in a natural environment is fundamentally determined by environmental and population factors that determine the availability of food. Water temperature regulates how much growth can occur with the available food. Brett et al. (1971) described the freshwater rearing phase of juvenile salmon as one of restricted environmental conditions and generally retarded growth. Many studies have observed an increase in the growth and productivity of fish populations in streams when temperature (and correspondingly) food is increased. This tends to occur even in the cases where temperatures exceed preferred and sometimes lethal levels (Murphy et al. 1981, Hawkins et. al., 1983, Martin 1985, Wilzbach 1985, Filbert and Hawkins 1995).

Table 1 summarizes results from laboratory and field studies of coho and steelhead temperature response (from Sullivan et al 2000). Steelhead and coho are similar, though not identical, in the temperatures at which various functions or behaviors occur. Importantly, Sullivan et al (2000) showed that even though the laboratory optimal growth temperatures for steelhead are within a narrower and cooler range than those of coho (e.g. their “growth curves”), steelhead grow better than coho when exposed to higher temperatures in natural streams. These authors suggest that this disparity results from a greater efficiency in obtaining food in natural environments by steelhead, thus allowing them to generally obtain a higher ration of food. Bisson et al (1988b) showed that the body form of these two fish differ, enabling steelhead to feed efficiently in riffle habitats where food supply is more abundant.  Thus, steelhead have a higher “net temperature tolerance” than coho.

With the exception of some spring-run Chinook salmon, most Chinook juveniles do not rear in streams through the summer and are therefore not typically exposed to late-summer conditions.

There has been some suggestion that there may be genetic adaptations by local populations that confer greater tolerance to temperatures.  However, literature on temperature thresholds for salmonids, as summarized in Table 1 is remarkably consistent despite differences in locations of subject fish (Sullivan et al. 2000, Hines and Ambrose 2000, Welsh et al. 2001).

One problem encountered in synthesizing laboratory and field studies is how to characterize the widely variable stream temperature characteristics of a stream in either a physically or biologically meaningful way is lack of standardization on reporting summary statistics. The measures of 7-day maximum values have been shown to have biological meaning (e.g. Brungs and Jones 1977). These types of metrics also provide useful indices for comparing temperature among streams. Sullivan et al (2000) showed that all of the short-term high temperature criteria relate closely to one another when calculated from the same stream

**Table 1. The spectrum of coho salmon and steelhead response at temperature thresholds synthesized for field and laboratory studies from Sullivan et al (2000). Threshold values are approximations, due to lack of consistency in reporting temperature averaging methods among studies. Temperature thresholds are standardized to the average 7-day maximum to the extent possible to allow comparison of field and laboratory study observations.**

| Biologic Response | COHO Approximate Temperature °C | STEELHEAD Approximate Temperature °C |
|---|---|---|
| Upper Critical Lethal Limit (death within minutes)-Lab | 29.5 | 30.5 |
| Geographic limit of species—Stream annual maximum temperature (Eaton 1995) | 30 | 31.0 |
| Geographic limit of species—Warmest 7-Day Average Daily Max Temperature (Eaton 1995) | 23.4 | 24.0 |
| Acute threshold U.S. EPA 1977—Annual Maximum | 25 | 26 |
| Acute threshold U.S. EPA 1977— 7-day average of daily maximum | 18 | 19 |
| Complete cessation of feeding ( laboratory studies) | 24 | 24 |
| Growth loss of 20% (simulated at average food supply) | 22.5 | 24.0 |
| Increase incidence of disease (under specific situations) | 22 | 22 |
| Temporary movements to thermal refuges | 22 | 22 |
| Growth loss of 10% (simulated at average food supply) (7-day average of daily maximum) | 16.5 | 20.5 |
| Optimal growth at range of food satiation (laboratory) | 12.5-18 | 10-16.5 |
| Growth loss of 20% (simulated at average food supply) 7-day average of daily maximum | 9 | 10 |
| Cessation of feeding and movement to refuge | 4 | 4 |

temperature record (7-day mean and maximum, annual maximum temperature, and long-term seasonal average). However, longer-term measures are better indicators of general ecologic metabolism. For example, degree-summation techniques sum duration of time (days, hours) above a selected threshold temperature.

## *Temperature Patterns and Salmonid Species Distribution Within Watersheds*

Temperatures supporting the physiologic functions of fish species reflect the ambient temperatures likely to be found in streams in each species' natural range of occurrence (Hokanson 1977). For salmonids, this range is from 0 to less than 30°C (see Table 1).

Within the range of distribution of salmonids in the Pacific Northwest, there is a west to east climatic gradient reflecting the marine influence at the coast and the orographic effects of interior mountain ranges. Coastal zones are characterized by maritime climates with high rainfall that occurs during the winter and dry warm summers. Interior zones are dryer, and rainfall may occur as rain or snow. Summers are very dry, and temperatures often hotter than coastal zones, although elevation can have a significant cooling effect. Comparison of river temperatures associated with forested regions throughout Washington, Oregon and Idaho show generally consistent occurrence of temperatures within the temperature tolerance of salmonids (Sullivan et al. 2000).

The temperature of streams and rivers within the range of distribution of salmonids in the Pacific Northwest and California typically vary widely on both temporal and spatial scales. For example, the range of hourly temperature over a year period for a smaller headwaters stream and larger mainstem river located within a forested watershed in Washington are shown in Figure 3. (The figure also shows the typical phase and migration timing for coho and steelhead salmon.) Similar patterns are observed in forested regions of California.

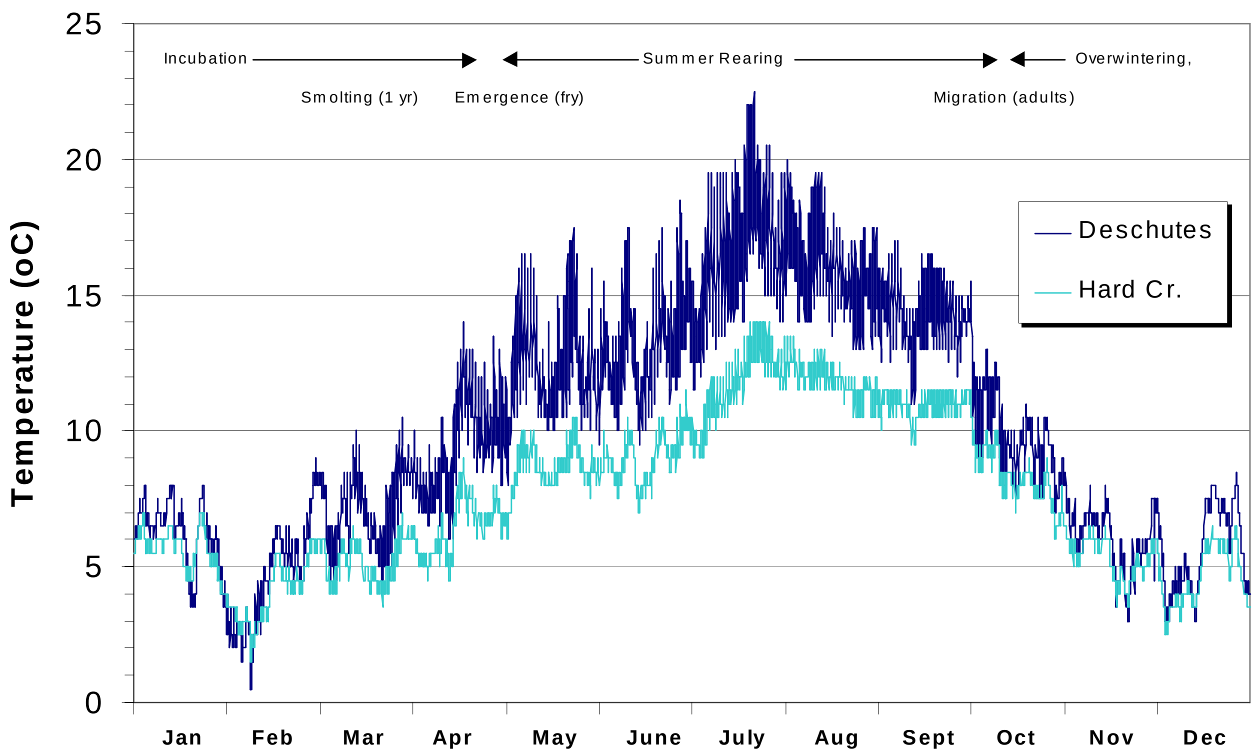
Active feeding and positive growth can occur at any time during the year when temperature is within the positive growth range illustrated in Figure 1. Juvenile salmon experience preferred temperatures for much of the year, and may experience stressful temperature conditions for relatively little time during the year. Water temperatures between 8 and 22°C tend to be the most prevalent temperatures observed in natal rivers and streams in the Pacific Northwest (Sullivan et al. 2000). Temperatures high enough to directly cause mortality are rare within the region where salmon occur. Temperatures high enough to cause stress (>22°C) may be common, especially in higher order streams.

## *Watershed Temperature Patterns*

Stream temperature tends to increase in the downstream direction from headwaters to lowlands. (Hynes 1970, Theurer et al 1984). The dominant environmental variables that regulate heat energy exchange for a given solar loading, and determine water temperature are stream depth, proportional view-to-the-sky, rate and temperature of groundwater inflow, and air temperature (Moore et al, 2005). Increasing temperature in the downstream direction reflects systematic tendencies in these critical environmental factors. Groundwater input becomes a smaller portion of the streamflow and has less cooling effect as streams get larger (Sullivan et al 1990). Air temperature increases with decreasing elevation (Lewis et al. 2000). Riparian vegetation and topography shade a progressively smaller proportion of the water surface as streams widen (Spence et al. 1996), until at some location there is no effective shade at all (Beschta et al. 1987, Gregory et al. 1991). Streams gain greater thermal inertia as stream flow volume increases (Beschta et al. 1987), thus adjusting more slowly to daily fluctuations in energy input. The typical watershed temperature pattern is illustrated in Figure 4.

Water temperature in larger rivers without riparian shading is in equilibrium with, and close to, air temperature. In smaller streams, water temperature is depressed below air temperature due to the cooling effects of groundwater inflow and the shading effects of the forest canopy (Sullivan et al. 1990; Poole and

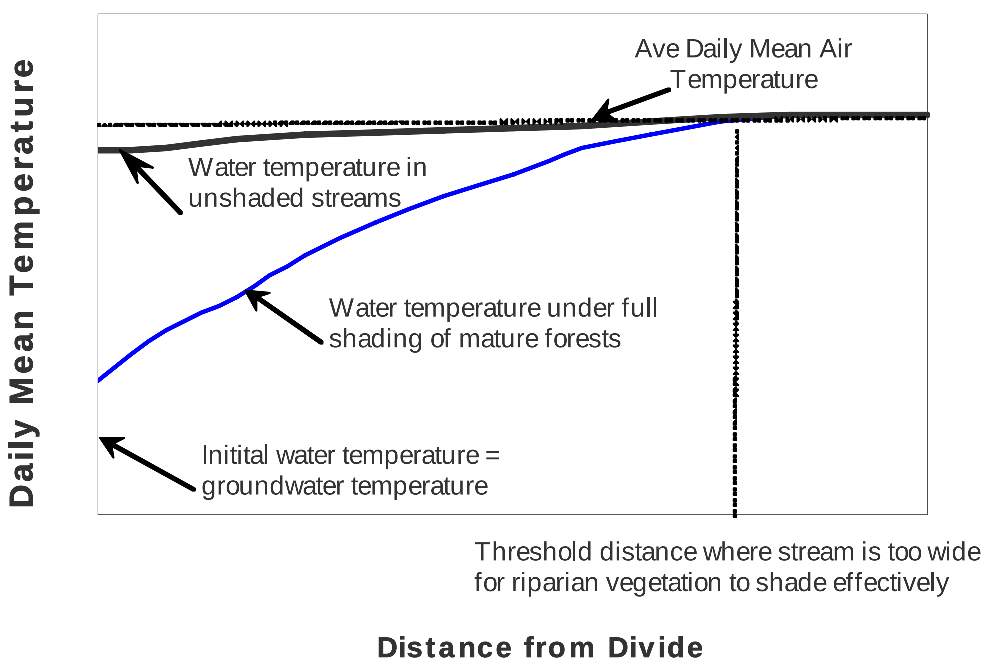
**Figure 5. Water temperature of the Deschutes River (148 km$^2$) and Hard Creek (2.3 km$^2$), a headwater tributary in the Cascades of Washington. Data are hourly measurements.**



Berman 2000, Moore 2005). The minimum temperature profile in Figure 4 indicates the general pattern of water temperature in streams in a fully forested watershed. The coolest temperatures will be observed in the smallest streams and will be near prevailing groundwater temperature. As the effects of these insulating variables lessens in the downstream direction, water temperature moves closer to air temperature until the threshold distance where riparian canopy no longer provides effective shade and the water temperature is closely correlated with air temperature alone (Kothandaraman 1972). It is likely that the shape of the minimum line varies both with basin air temperature and with differences in natural vegetation.

Various authors have reported the likely summertime temperatures that mark the highest and lowest temperatures on this curve for streams and rivers of the Pacific Northwest and California used by salmonids. Minimum groundwater temperatures are approximately 10-13$^{o}$C (Sullivan et al. 1990, Lewis et al. 2000). Maximum temperatures typically range from 20 to 26$^{o}$C (Sullivan et al. 2000, Lewis et al. 2000) depending on location.

**Figure 4. General pattern of temperature at the watershed scale and potential range of response to forest removal. (from Sullivan et al. 1990).**



Removal of vegetation in headwater streams may allow temperature to increase up to (but not exceed) the basin air temperature maxima.  Thus, the potential response of water temperature to forest harvest may be large in small streams, but only small, and difficult to detect in mid to large size watersheds.

## *Fish Species Distribution Within Watersheds*

Salmonid species found in California include Chinook (O. tshawytscha), coho (O. kisutch), and steelhead (O. salmo).  These species are the most temperature tolerant of the anadromous species in the salmonidae family. The southern-most extent of the natural range of salmon is found at latitude approximately equal to San Francisco, dipping further south along the coast.  Eaton (1995) showed a strong relationship between prevailing summertime maximum temperatures and the end of the range of occurrence.

Salmon species throughout their range have evolved to use different parts of the river system during their freshwater rearing phase.   Systematic changes in the occurrence or dominance of species within river systems in part reflects the temperature patterns as one important component of habitat.  Differences among species can confer competitive advantages in relation to environmental variables that influence the species' distribution (Brett 1971, Baltz et. al. 1982, Reeves et al. 1987, DeStaso and Rahel 1994).

Steelhead have higher net temperature tolerance, are widely distributed within the northern region of California and occupy a broader range of habitats including larger rivers and smaller streams. Coho have the lowest net temperature tolerance of the salmonids found in California, and are found primarily where temperatures are coolest for most of the year.  They primarily occur in the low to mid-order tributaries within the coastal zone.

Chinook salmon are perhaps the most temperature tolerant of all salmon species.  They have the highest optimal temperatures for growth and fastest growth rates of all the salmonids.  Fall run chinook emerge from gravels in spring and move to the larger (warmer) rivers where their growth rate allows them to migrate to the ocean with weeks to a few months.  The juveniles migrate out of the river before the warmest summer temperatures occur.

An exception are spring-run Chinook salmon.  Some juveniles reside in streams throughout the summer.  These salmon are also the only salmonid that must cope with summer water temperatures as adults.  They typically enter the Sacramento River from March to July and continue upstream to tributary streams where they over-summer before spawning in the fall (Myers et al. 1998).  Adult spring-run Chinook salmon require deep, cold pools to hold over in during the summer months prior to their fall spawning period. When these pools exceed

21$^{o}$C adult Chinook salmon can experience decreased reproductive success, retarded growth rate, decreased fecundity, increased metabolic rate, migratory barriers, and other behavioral or physiological stresses (McCullough 1999).

### *California Regional Temperatures*

To date, there has been no California-wide water temperature study or synthesis of available information. A regional stream temperature study was conducted within the Coho ESU by the Forest Science Project at Humboldt State University (Lewis et al. 2000). The area where coho occur within California is delineated by the Coho ESU includes the northern coast zone and portions of the interior Klamath region. The regional study measured water temperature at hundreds of sites in a variety of streams and rivers well distributed within the area from approximately San Francisco northward to the Oregon border, and from the coast to approximately 300 km inland. Stream size varied from watershed areas as small as 20 to a maximum of over 2,000,000 hectares. The assessment included new data and historical analysis of historic temperature assessments, augmented with recently measured temperature at the same locations as earlier measurements.

Results of the study provide some general insight into maximum summer stream temperatures within this region of California.

1) The regional study confirmed the general increasing trends in temperature from watershed divide to lowlands.

2) The annual maximum temperature ranged from 12-25$^{o}$C in the coastal zone and 14-32$^{o}$C inland beyond the coastal influence. Temperature as high as 32$^{o}$C occurs, but is rare.

3) The cooling influence of the coastal fog belt on air temperature extends as far inland as 50 km in some rivers, and is significant enough to affect water temperature within a distance 20 km from the coast in some locations. The effect of the cool air is sufficient to reduce some river temperatures by as much as 5-7$^{o}$C degrees by the time water reaches the ocean. These help prevent prolonged exposure to stressful temperatures. The coast fog zone is the dominant zone for coho productivity in the state.

4) Maximum temperature in rivers in the coastal fog belt can still exceed 20$^{o}$C

5) No one geographic, riparian, or climatic factor explains water temperature with high precision. Multiple regression models developed from the data explain about 65% of the variability, similar to finding in

other parts of the Pacific Northwest (Sullivan et al. 1990).

6) The coolest maximum temperatures (<18$^{o}$C) are most likely to occur where:

- Distance from divide is less than 10 km.
- Canopy cover is >75%

7 The probability of achieving temperature of <20$^{o}$C decreases at 1) lower canopy closure, 2) distance from divide as an indicator of stream size, and 3) with distance from the coast.

8 There is relatively small difference in maximum water temperatures between interior and coastal streams of similar watershed areas in basins less than 100,000 hectares in size.

What needs to be understood better for California:

1) the availability of cool water at the watershed and population scale

2) the overall cumulative effect of temperature on the annual basis.

## *Salmonid Primer References*

Adams, S.M. & Breck, J.E., 1990. Bioenergetics. Methods for Fish Biology.

Baltz, D.M., et al, 1987. Influence of temperature in microhabitat choise by fishes in a California stream. Trans. Am. Fish. Soc., 116:12.

Beschta, R.L., et al, 1987. Stream temperatures and aquatic habitat: fisheries and forestry interactions. In: Salo, E. and T.W. Cundy, Proc. Conference Streamside Management: forestry and fishery interactions. Held U. Washington, Seattle, Feb 1986: 191:232.

Biro, P.A., 1998. Staying cool: behavioral thermoregulation during summer by young-of-year brook trout in a lake. Trans. Am. Fish. Soc., 127:212-222.

Bisson, P.A., Sullivan, K. & Nielsen, J.L., 1988. Channel hydraulics, habitat use, and body form ofjuvenile coho salmon, steelhead, and cutthroat trout in streams. Trans. Am. Fish. Soc., 117:262-273.

Brett, J.R., 1952. Temperture tolerance of young Pacific salmon, Genus Oncorhynchus. . J. of the Fish. Res. Bd. Can., 9:6:265-323.

Brett, J.R., 1956. Some principles in the thermal requirements of fishes. The Quarterly Review of Biology, 31:2:75-87.

Brett, J.R., 1971. Energetic responses of salmon to temperature. A study of some thermal relations in the physiology and freshwater ecology of sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka). Am. Zoologist, 11:99-113.

Brett, J.R., 1995. Energetics. In: C. Groot, L. Margolis, and W.C. Clarke (eds). Physiological ecology of Pacific salmon. UBC Press, Vancouver, B.C.: 1-69.

Brett, J.R., Clarke, W.C. & Shelbourn, J.E., 1982. Experiments on thermal requirements for growth and food conversion efficiency of juvenile chinook salmon Oncorhynchus tshawytscha. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. No. 1127. ..

Brosofske, K.D., et al, 1997. Harvesting effects on microclimatic gradients from small streams to uplands in western Washington. Ecol. Applications, 7:4:1188.

Brungs, W.A. & Jones, B.R., 1977. Temperature criteria for freshwater fish: protocol and procedures. Ecological Research Series., U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA-600/3-77-061, Duluth, Minnesota.

Cairns, J.J., et al, 1978. Effects of temperature on aquatic organism sensitivity to selected chemicals.. Virginia Water Resources Research Center, Bull 106. 88 pages.

Christie, G.C. & Regier, H.A., 1988. Measures of optimal thermal habitat and their relationship to yields for four commercial fish species. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci., 45:301314.

De Staso, J.I. & Rahel, F.J., 1994. Influence of water temperature on interactions between juvenile Colorado River cutthroat trout and brook trout in a laboratory stream. Trans. Am. Fish. Soc., 123:289-297.

Donaldson, L.R. & Foster, F.J., 1941. Experimental study of the effect of various water temperatures on the growth, food utilization, and mortality rate of fingerling sockeye salmon. Trans. Am. Fish. Soc., 70:339-346.

Eaton, J.G., et al, 1995. A field information-based system for estimating fish temperature tolerances. Fisheries, 20:4:10-18.

Elliott, J.M., 1981. Some aspects of thermal stress on freshwater teleosts. Stress and Fish. In: A.D. Pickering, ed. Stress and Fish. Academic Press, London: 209-245. .

Everest, F.H. & Chapman, D.W., 1972. Habitat selection and spatial interaction by juvenile Chinook salmon and Steelhead trout in two Idaho streams. J. Fish. Res. Bd. Can., 29:1:91-100.

Filbert, R.B. & Hawkins, C.P., 1995. Variation in condition of rainbow trout in relation to food, temperature, and individual length in the Green River, Utah. Trans. Am. Fish. Soc., 124:824-835.

Fry, F.E.J., 1971. The effect of environmental factors on the physiology of fish. In. W.S. Hoar and D.J. Randall. Environment relations and Behavior. Vol 6. Fish physiology , Academic Press, New York: pp 1-98. .

Griffiths, J.S. & Alderdice, D.F., 1972. Effects of acclimation and acute temperature experience on the swimming speed of juvenile coho salmon. J. Fish. Res. Bd. Canada, 29:251-264.

Hawkins, C.P., et al, 1983. Density of fish and salamanders in relation to riparian canopy and physical habitat in streams of the Northwestern United States. Can. J. Fish. Aq. Sci., 40:8:1173-1185.

Hokanson, K.E.F., 1977. Temperature requirements of some percids and adaptations to the seasonal temperature cycle. J. Fish. Res. Bd. Canada, 34:1524-1550.

Holtby, L.B., McMahon, T.E. & Scrivener, J.C., 1989. Stream temperatures and inter-annual variability in the emigration timing of coho salmon (Oncorhynchus kisutch) smolts and fry and chum salmon (O. keta) fry from Carnation Creek, British Columbia. Can. J. Fish. Aq. Sci., 46:1396.

Hynes, H.B.N., 1970. The ecology of running waters. University of Toronto Press, Toronto.

Jobling, M., 1981. Temperature tolerance and the final preferendum--rapid methods for the assessment of optimum growth temperatures. J. Fish. Biol., 19:439-455

Keith, R.M., et al, 1998. Response of juvenile salmonids to riparian and instream cover modification in small streams flowing through second-growth forests of southeast Alaska. Trans. Am. Fish. Soc., 127:889-907.

Kothandaraman, V., 1972. Air-water temperature relationship in Illinois River. Wat. Resources Bull., 8:1-38-45.

Lee, R.M. & Rinne, J.N., 1980. Critical thermal maxima of five trout species in the southwestern United States. Trnas. Am. Fish. Soc., 109:632-635.

Lewis, T.E., D.W. Lamphear, D.R. McCanne, A.S. Webb, J.P. Krieter, W.D. Conroy. 2000. Regional assessment of stream temperatures across northern California and their relationship to various landscape-level and site-specific attributes. Tech. Report. Forest Science Project, Humboldt State University Foundation. Arcata, CA.

Linton, T.K., Reid, S.D. & Wood, C.M., 1997. The metabolic costs and physiological consequences to juvenile rainbow trout of a simulated summer warming scenario in the presence and absence of sublethal ammonia. Trans. Am. Fish. Soc., 126:259-272.

Magnuson, J.J., Crowder, L.B. & Medvick, P.A., 1979. Temperature as an ecological resource. Amer. Zool., 19:331-343.

Martin, D.J., Wasserman, L.J. & Dale, V.H., 1986. Influence of riparian vegetation on posteruption survival of coho salmon fingerlings on the west-side streams of Mount St. Helens, Washington. N. Am. J. Fish. Manage., 6:1-8.

Mason, J.C., 1976. Response of underyearling coho salmon to supplemental feeding in a natural stream. J. Wildl. Manage., 40:4:775-778.

McCullough, D.A., 1999. A review and synthesis of effects of alterations to the water temperature regime on freshwater life stages of salmonids, with special reference to chinook salmon, Seattle, WA. U.S. E.P.A. Technical Report, Region 10, Seattle, WA. February, 1999. 272 pp.

Murphy, M.L. & Hall, J.D., 1981. Varied effects of clear-cut logging on predators and their habitat in small streams of the Cascade Mountains, Oregon. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci., 38:137.

Nielsen, J.L., Lisle, T.E. & Ozaki, V., 1994. Thermally stratified pools and their use by steelhead in northern California streams. Trans. Am. Fish. Soc., 123:613-626.

Poole, G.C. and C.H. Berman. 2001. An ecological perspective on in-stream temperature: natural heat dynamics and mechanisms of human-caused thermal degradation. Environ. Manage. 27:787-802.

Puckett, K.J. & Dill, L.M., 1985. The energetics of feeding territoriality in juvenile coho salmon (Oncorhynchus kisutch). Behavior, 42:97-111.

Quinn, T.P. & Peterson, N.P., 1996. The influence of habitat complexity and fish size on over-winter survival and growth of individually marked juvenile coho salmon (Oncorhynchus kisutch) in Big Beef Creek, Washington. Can. J. Fish. Aq. Sci., 53:1555-1564.

Reeves, G.H., Everest, F.H. & Hall, J.D., 1987. Interactions between the redside shiner (Richardsonius balteatus) and the steelhead trout (Salmo gairdneri) in western Oregon: the influence of water temperature. Can. J. Fish. Aq. Sci., 44:1603-1613.

Scrivener, J.C. & Andersen, B.C., 1984. Logging impacts and some mechanisms that determine the size of spring and summer populations of coho salmon fry (Oncorhynchus kisutch) in Carnation Creek, British Columbia. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci., 41:1097-1105.

Sullivan, K. & Adams, T.A., 1990. An analysis of temperature patterns in environments based on physical principles and field data. Technical Report 044-5002/89/2, Weyerhaeuser Company, Tacoma, WA.

Sullivan, K., et al, 2000. An analysis of the effects of temperature on salmonids of the Pacific Northwest with implications for selecting temperature criteria. Technical Report, Sustainable Ecosystems Institute, Portland, Oregon.

Sweeney, B.W. & Vannote, R.L., 1986. Growth and production of a stream stonefly: influences of diet and temperature. Ecology, 67:5:1396-1410.

Tang, M. & Boisclair, D., 1995. Relationship between respiration rate of juvenile brook trout (Salvelinus fontinalis), water temperature, and swimming characteristics. Can. J. Fish. Aq. Sci., 52:2138-2145.

Theurer, F.D., Voos, K.A. & Miller, W.J., 1984. Instream water temperature model. Instream Flow Information Paper No. 16. U.S.D.I Fish and Wildlife Service FWS/OBS/-84/15.

Warren, C.E., 1971. Biology and water pollution control. W.B. Saunders Company, Philadelphia.

Weatherly, A.H. & Gill, H.S., 1995. Growth.:101-158. In: Groot, C., Margolis, L. and Clarke, W.C. Eds. Physiological ecology of Pacific salmon. UBC Press, Vancouver, B.C. Canada.

Welsh, H.H., Jr., Hodgson, G.R. & Harvey, B.C., 2001. Distribution of juvenile coho salmon in relation to water temperatures in tributaries of the Mattole River, California. N. Amer. J. Fish. Manage, 21:464.

Wilzbach, M., Cummins, K.W. & Hall, J.D., 1986. Influence of habitat manipulations on interactions between cutthroat trout and invertebrate drift. Ecology, 67:4:898-911.

Wurtsbaugh, W.A. & Davis, G.E., 1977. Effects of temperature and ration level on the growth and food conversion efficiency of Salmo gairdneri, Richardson. J. Fish. Biol., 11:87-98.

KS6/15/07

# Appendix 3D: Primer: Sediment Riparian Exchange Function

# Primer
# on
# Sediment
# Riparian Exchanges Related to Forest Management in the Western U.S.

Prepared by the
Technical Advisory Committee
of the
California Board of Forestry and Fire Protection

May 2007

Version 1.0

# Technical Advisory Committee Members

| | |
|---|---|
| Ms. Charlotte Ambrose | NOAA Fisheries |
| Dr. Marty Berbach | California Dept. of Fish and Game |
| Mr. Pete Cafferata | California Dept. of Forestry and Fire Protection |
| Dr. Ken Cummins | Humboldt State University, Institute of River Ecosystems |
| Dr. Brian Dietterick | Cal Poly State University, San Luis Obispo |
| Dr. Cajun James | Sierra Pacific Industries |
| Mr. Gaylon Lee | State Water Resources Control Board |
| Mr. Gary Nakamura (Chair) | University of California Cooperative Extension |
| Dr. Sari Sommarstrom | Sari Sommarstrom & Associates |
| Dr. Kate Sullivan | Pacific Lumber Company |
| Dr. Bill Trush | McBain & Trush, Inc. |
| Dr. Michael Wopat | California Geological Survey |

# Staff

| | |
|---|---|
| Mr. Christopher Zimny | California Dept. of Forestry and Fire Protection |

Prepared as background for the 2007 Scientific Literature Review of Forest Management Effects on Riparian Functions in Anadromous Salmonid Fishes for the California Board of Forestry and Fire Protection.

To be cited as:
*California Board of Forestry and Fire Protection Technical Advisory Committee (CBOF-TAC). 2007. Primer on Sediment Riparian Exchanges Related to Forest Management in the Western U.S. , Version 1.0. Sacramento, CA.*

# PRIMER: SEDIMENT RIPARIAN EXCHANGE FUNCTION

## Erosion and Sediment Processes in California's Forested Watersheds

Erosion is a natural process that is well described for California in several college textbooks (Norris and Webb 1990, Mount 1995). California's evolving landscape reflects the "competing processes of mountain building and mountain destruction", with landslides, floods, and earthquakes working as episodic forces which often create major changes (Mount 1995). In general, the land surface is sculpted by the forces of erosion: water, wind, and ice. The physical and chemical composition of the rock determines how it weathers by these forces. The role of running water in shaping the earth's surface is considered the most important of all the geologic processes and has received the greatest attention by researchers (Leopold et al. 1964; Morisawa 1968).

The rates of natural erosion are very high in the State's regions having greater amounts of rain and snow, such as the geologically young mountains of the Northern Coast Ranges, Klamath Mountains, and Sierra Nevada (Norris and Webb 1990). Mean annual precipitation was shown to be a relatively precise indicator of climatic stress on sedimentation in Northern California (Anderson et al. 1976).

Soil erosion processes on upland watersheds include: a) surface erosion (e.g., dry ravel, sheet and rill), b) gullying, and c) mass movement or wasting (e.g., soil creep and landslides, such as slumps, earthflows, debris slides, large rotational slides). These can occur singly or in combination. Falling raindrops can be a primary cause of surface erosion, especially where soils have little vegetative cover (Brooks et al. 1991). Erosion products deposited by water become "sediment", brought to a channel by gravity and erosive forces. The water-related, or "fluvial", processes active within the stream channel and floodplain are: 1) the transport of sediment; 2) the erosion of stream channel and land surface; and 3) the deposition or storage of sediment.

### Sediment Sizes, Transport & Measurement

Sediment is any material deposited by water, but research usually describes sediment according to its size, means of transport, and method of measurement (MacDonald et al. 1991, Leopold 1994). Inorganic sediment ranges in size from very fine clay to very large boulders. Particle size classes tend to be split into a different number of size categories by physical scientists (AGI 2006) and by biologists (Cummins 1962). The Modified Wentworth Scale is commonly used by biologists (Waters 1995) and includes 11 particle sizes and names: clay, silt, sand (five classes), gravel, pebbles, cobbles, and boulders. In addition, sediment includes particulate organic matter, composed of organic silts and clays and decomposed material. Grain size terminology can also vary:

- *Fine-grained sediment* (“fines”) includes the smaller particles, such as silt and clay (usually <0.83 mm in diameter). The largest size class for this category varies, sometimes including sand and small gravel (1-9 mm) (Everest et al. 1987).
- *Coarse-grained sediment* represents the larger particles, such as gravels and cobbles. It makes up the bed and bars of many, if not most, rivers. The smallest size class for this category varies, and sometimes includes sand and small gravel (1-9 mm).

Whatever the term used, it is important to understand the sediment definition and particle size that each research article is using before extrapolating the results.

Sediment is transported by streams as either *suspended load* of the finest particle sizes (from clay to fine sand <2.0 mm) that are carried within the water column, or as *bedload* of the larger particles (from coarse sand to boulders) that never rise off the bed more than a few grain diameters. Higher velocity and steeper streambed slope can transport larger grain size, for example.

Since the measurement of sediment transport levels can be problematic, it is done in several ways. (For detailed descriptions of common methods, including the strengths and limitations of each, see MacDonald et al. 1991, Gordon et al. 1992, and Waters 1995.)

*Suspended sediment* samplers measure direct suspended sediment concentration (SSC) in milligrams of sediment per liter of water (mg/l). Since most sediment transport takes place during high flows, samples must be taken during these periods to develop long-term averages. Many samples are needed near peak discharges to determine the error margin. Two types of samplers can be used: depth-integrating and point-integrating.

*Turbidity* is a measure of the ability of light to be transmitted through the water column (e.g., the relative cloudiness). Turbidity sampling and meters are often used as a substitute for the direct measurement of the suspended sediment load of a selected stream reach, but the relationship may vary and requires a careful study design to make accurate correlations Turbidity is frequently higher during early season runoff and on the rising limb of a storm’s runoff; automated data collection is now being used to more accurately capture such infrequent events (Eads and Lewis 2003). Turbid water may also be due to organic acids, particulates, plankton, and microorganisms (which can be ecologically beneficial); interpretation must therefore be carefully done. In redwood-dominated watersheds of north coastal California, Madej (2005) found the organic content of suspended sediment samples ranged from 10 to 80 weight percent for individual flood events.  Turbidity is not a good indicator for movement of coarse-grained sediments, such as sand in granitic watersheds, since these larger grain sizes move at the bottom of the water column or as bedload (Morisawa 1968; Sommarstrom et al. 1990; Gordon et al. 1992).

*Bedload* measurement can be a difficult method since this larger-sized sediment must be collected manually during high flows when bedload is in transport. While there are different types of methods and equipment, the Helley-Smith bedload sampler has become the standard for bedload measurement, especially for coarse sand and gravel beds. Multiple samples must be taken per cross-section of stream. Bedload cannot be collected automatically as readily as suspended sediment can.  Bedload as a percentage of suspended load can range from 2-150 percent; 10 percent bedload would be a conservative estimate for a storm event with muddy-looking water in a gravel-bed stream.

Sediment that is deposited within stream channels can be measured by changes in channel characteristics. The most common methods include:  a) channel cross-sections, b) channel width / width-depth ratios; b) pool parameters (e.g., fines stored in pools (V*)), c) bed material (particle-size distribution, embeddedness, surface vs. subsurface particle size); d) longitudinal profiles in upstream-downstream directions (e.g., using the “thalweg”, the deepest part of the stream channel).

## Fluvial Processes and Sediment

Stream reaches can be defined by the dominant fluvial processes: erosion /transport / storage (Schumm 1977; Montgomery and Buffington, 1997; Bisson, *et al,* 2006).  The steep headwaters tend to be the source of erosion, the middle elevation streams are the transfer zone, and the low elevation streams are the depositional zone. However, any given stream reach demonstrates all three processes over a period of time; the relative importance varies by location in the watershed.

## Natural Sources of Sediment

Within the riparian zone, natural sediment sources and the effects of the riparian zone tend to vary by the type of channel reach (Montgomery and Buffington, 1997; Bisson, *et al,* 2006).  The uppermost parts of many source reaches are characterized by exposed bedrock, glacial deposits, or colluvial valleys or swales.  Stream reaches in bedrock valleys are usually strongly confined and the dominant sediment sources are fluvial erosion, hillslope processes, and mass wasting. The colluvial headwater basins have floors filled with colluvium which has accumulated over very long periods of time.  Such channels as may exist are directly coupled with the hillslopes, and their beds and banks are composed of poorly graded colluvium. Stream flow is shallow and ephemeral or intermittent. The colluvial fill is periodically excavated by debris flows which scour out the stream channels and delivery large quantities of sediment and large woody debris to downstream reaches (Montgomery and Buffington, 1997; Bisson, *et al,* 2006). There is often is no distinctively riparian vegetation bordering the channels.

A bit further downstream, transport reaches commonly still have steep gradients, are strongly confined and subject to scouring by debris flows. Stream beds are consequently characterized either by frequent irregularly arranged boulders or by channel-spanning accumulations of boulders and large cobbles that separate pools. The boulders move only in the largest flood flows and may have been emplaced by other processes (e.g., glacial till, landslides). Streams generally have a sediment transport capacity far in excess of the sediment supply (except following mass wasting events). Dominant sediment sources are fluvial and hillslope processes and mass wasting (Montgomery and Buffington, 1997; Bisson, *et al,* 2006). The transition between transport and response reaches is especially likely to have persistent and pronounced impacts from increased sediment supply (Montgomery and Buffington, 1997).

In the higher response reaches, stream gradients and channel confinement become more moderate. Incipient floodplains or floodprone areas may begin to border the channels, so they are not so coupled to hillslope processes. The typical channel bed is mostly straight and featureless with gravel and cobble distributed quite evenly across the channel width; there are few pools. Where the bed surface is armored by cobble, sediment transport capacity exceeds sediment supply, but unarmored beds indicate a balance between transport capacity and supply. Dominant sediment sources are fluvial processes, including bank erosion, and debris flows are more likely to cause deposition than scouring (Montgomery and Buffington, 1997; Bisson, *et al,* 2006). There is usually distinctively riparian vegetation along the channel.

Also in low to moderate gradients, braided reaches may form where the sediment supply is far in excess of transport capacity (e.g., glacial outwash, mass wasting) and/or stream banks are weak or erodible (Buffington, *et al*, 2003). Channels are multi-threaded with numerous bars. The bars and channels can shift frequently and dramatically, and channel widening is common. The size of bed particles varies widely. Banks are typically composed of alluvium. Bank erosion, other fluvial processes, debris flows, and glaciers are the dominant sediment sources. Distinctively riparian vegetation is common, and is especially important in providing root strength to weak alluvial deposits (Bisson, *et al*, 2006).

In lower-elevation, lower-gradient response reaches, channels are generally sinuous, unconfined by valley walls, and bordered by floodplains. Beds are composed of gravel or sand arranged into ripples or dunes with intervening pools. Sediment supply exceeds sediment transport capacity, so much of the finer sediment is deposited outside the channel onto the floodplain. The dominant sediment sources are fluvial processes, bank erosion, inactive channels, and debris flows. Distinctively riparian vegetation typically grows on the floodplain where it plays important roles in: i) reinforcing weak alluvial banks and floodplains, and ii) providing hydraulic roughness to reduce erosion during overbank flooding (Montgomery and Buffington, 1997; Bisson, *et al,* 2006).

Natural sediment production in undisturbed watersheds can vary significantly, depending upon soil erodibility, geology, climate, landform, and vegetation. Delivery of sediment to channels by surface erosion is generally low in undisturbed forested watersheds, but can vary greatly by year (Swanston 1991). Annual differences are caused by weather patterns, availability of materials, and changes in exposed surface area. Sediment yields for surface erosion tend to be naturally higher in rain-dominated than in snow-dominated areas. Soil mass movement is the predominant erosional process in steep, high rainfall forest lands of the Pacific Coast. The role of natural disturbances in maintaining and restoring the aquatic ecosystem is becoming more recognized by scientists using interdisciplinary approaches (Reeves et al. 1995).

**California Examples**

Landslides are an important sediment source in northern coastal ranges of California, particularly where they were active in the wet period of the late Pleistocene and have remained dormant for long periods. If reactivated by undercutting at the toe, these slides can deliver immense amounts of sediment to channels (Leopold 1994). Kelsey (1980) found in the Van Duzen River basin that avalanche debris slides accounted for headwater erosion storage, but that natural fluvial hillslope erosion rates were quite low. In the North Coast range, small headwater streams tend to aggrade their beds during small storms and degrade during large, peak flow events. However, in larger streams, sediment aggrades during large events and gradually erodes during smaller ones (Janda et al.1978).

Sediment budgets offer a quantitative accounting of the rates of sediment production, transport, storage, and discharge (Swanson et al. 1982; Reid & Dunne 1996). They are performed in California by academic researchers (Kelsey 1980; Raines 1991), consultants (e.g., Benda 2003), and agencies. In a review of sediment source analyses completed for agency-prepared Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL) allocations in nine north coast California watersheds, the amount of the “natural” sediment source contribution ranged from a low of 12% to a high of 72% over the past 20-50 year period (Kramer et al. 2001). An evaluation of sediment sources in a granitic watershed of the Klamath Mountains found 24% of the erosion and 40% of the sediment yield to be natural background levels in 1989 (Sommarstrom et al. 1990). Post-fire erosion can be a major component of sediment budgets in semi-arid regions of California (Benda 2003).

### Role of Riparian Vegetation

Forested riparian ecosystems influence sediment regimes in many ways. First, riparian plant species are adapted to flooding, erosion, sediment deposition, seasonally saturated soil environments, physical abrasion, and stem breakage (Dwire et al. 2006). Sediment transported downslope from overland flow passes by riparian vegetation, where it can accumulate or be transported through the riparian area (USEPA 1975; Swanson et al. 1982b). The significance of vegetation's role in providing bank stability and improving fish habitat was first recognized as early as 1885 (Van Cleef 1885). Riparian plant roots help provide streambank, floodplain, and slope stability (Thorne 1990; Abernathy and Rutherford 2000; NRC 2002) and can bind bank sediment, reducing sediment inputs to streams (Dunaway et al. 1994). Bank material is much more susceptible to erosion below the rooting zone, but vegetated banks are typically more stable than unvegetated ones (Hickin 1984). Soil, hydrology, and vegetation are interconnected in bank stability, though the understanding has developed more slowly (Sedell and Beschta 1991; NRC 2002). For example, the effect of riparian vegetation roots on the mass stability of stream banks may be overestimated in erosion models, according to recent research (Pollen and Simon 2005). In a study on the Upper Truckee River, California, a willow species provided an order of magnitude more root reinforcement than lodgepole pine and reduced the frequency of bank failures and sediment delivery (Simon, Pollen, and Langendoen 2006).
Riparian vegetation patterns appear to indicate specific landforms and local hydrogeomorphic conditions; the patterns differ by geographic location and climate, such as semi-arid versus humid regions (Hupp and Ostercamp 1996). Since streamside areas tend to have high moisture and low soil strength, they are vulnerable to compaction and physical disturbance (Dwire et al. 2006). For some sediment processes originating from upslope of the riparian zone, vegetation may have little influence. Large, deep-seated landslides are probably not affected by streamside plants and downed wood, for example (Swanson et al. 1982b). Current conditions of riparian plant communities need to be viewed in the context of the historical alterations to the landscape, including land management (NCASI 2005).

**Effects of Sediment on Aquatic Life of Streams**

While erosion processes can provide sources of gravels for fish spawning, excessive sediment deposition can be harmful to aquatic life. Habitat needs for anadromous salmonid fish of the Pacific Coast are well described by Bjornn and Reiser (1991), with a review of the effects of fine sediment on fish habitats and fish production compiled by Everest et al. (1987), Furniss (1991), Walters (1995), Spence et al. (1996), and CDFG (2004). A brief summary of the effects of sediment on critical life stages of salmon and trout is as follows:

- Spawning: Fine sediment can become embedded in spawning gravels, reducing the abundance and quality available for spawning and possibly preventing the female from excavating her nest (redd); excessive sediment loading can cause channel aggradation, braiding, widening, and increased subsurface flows, all reducing spawning gravel abundance; excess sediment can fill pools that are needed for rest and escapement of adults migrating upstream to spawn.
- Egg Incubation: Excessive fine sediments can suffocate or impede egg development or developing alevins by reducing or blocking intragravel water flow, oxygenation, and gas exchange. Organic sediment, however, can provide valuable food (e.g., bugs) for fish (Madej 2005).
- Juvenile Rearing: Coarse and fine sediment can fill pools, which reduces the volume of habitat available for critical rearing space and the population that can be sustained; fine sediment can cover the streambed and suffocate benthic macroinvertebrates, reducing availability of important food source (Suttle et al. 2004). Chronic turbidity from suspended fine sediment interferes with feeding effectiveness of fry and smolts, reducing their growth rate or forcing them to emigrate (Sigler et al. 1984; Newcombe and Jensen 1996; Rosetta 2004).

The review by Everest et al. (1987) demonstrated that the effects of fine sediment on salmonids are complex and depend on many interacting factors: species and race of fish, duration of freshwater rearing, spawning escapement within a stream system, presence of other fish species, availability of spawning and rearing habitats, stream gradient, channel morphology, sequence of flow events, basin lithology, and history of land use (Furniss et al. 1991). It also should be noted that research on the effect of “fine sediment” on salmonid reproduction (e.g., percent survival of fry emergence from eggs) varies in the definition of sediment size, ranging from 0.85mm to 9.5 mm, but tends to focus on 2.0 millimeters or less (Everest et al. 1987). One needs to be careful in interpretation of the literature when comparing the effects of differently defined “fines” (Sommarstrom et al. 1990.)

The first major literature review on the aquatic effects of human-caused sediment was published in 1961 by California Dept. of Fish and Game biologists Cordone and Kelley, who concluded that sediment was harmful to trout and salmon streams.  Productive streams, at every trophic level, contain stored sediment and large organic debris and are more productive than channels with too little or too much sediment (Everest et al. 1987). An early California study of streams with increased sedimentation found that fish biomass decreased in some streams and increased in others (Burns 1972). Stream macroinvertebrate diversity was significantly decreased in stream reaches below failed logging road crossings, implying the effect of higher sediment levels (Erman et al. 1977). In a review of stream characteristics in old-growth forests, the authors noted that many streams in California have naturally high sediment loads, including an abundance of fines less than 1 mm, but historically these streams supported healthy populations of salmonids (Sedell and Swanson 1984).

## Forest Management & Sediment Effects

The literature on the erosion and sediment impacts of forest operations is quite extensive, though much of it comes out of the Pacific Northwest. Most of the California research on private forestland has focused on the north coastal redwood region, particularly in the Caspar Creek Experimental Watershed of the Jackson Demonstration State Forest in Mendocino County (e.g., Zeimer 1998; Rice et al. 2004) and in the Redwood Creek watershed as part of Redwood National Park related research (e.g., Best et al. 1995; Madej 2005).

### Historic Logging Practices

Certain mid-20$^{th}$ century logging practices were clearly identified as harming water quality. Clearcut logging, of large portions of a watershed down to the edge of streams, and the logging road system, were noted as a major source of sediment in earlier studies in Oregon (Brown and Krygier 1971; Swanson and Dyrness 1975) and California (Cordone and Kelly 1961; Burns 1972). Cordone and Kelley in 1961 perceived that the bulk of stream damage was caused by carelessness and could be prevented “with little additional expense”, they thought at the time. Over thirty years ago, Burns (1972) examined logging and road effects on juvenile anadromous salmonids in northern California streams, with all streams showing sediment increases following logging. Evidence was also gathered to show that good logging practices could reduce sedimentation problems in the western region (Haupt and Kidd 1965; Brown 1983).

Sediment and other impacts led to a series of increasingly protective measures for forestry operations on public and private lands in the U.S. In 1973, California's State Water Resources Control Board recommended improved timber harvest and road construction methods at the time of the passage of the State Forest Practice Act but prior to the adoption of the Forest Practice Rules in 1975 by the Board of Forestry (SWRCB 1973). Tighter stream protection rules were later required by the State, as described under Riparian Buffers below. Berbach (2001) describes the evolution of such measures for private forestland in California.

**Roads as a Major Source of Sediment**

Logging roads have historically been the largest, or one of the largest, sources of forest management-related sediment (Trimple and Sartz 1957; Megahan and Kidd 1972; Burns 1972; Anderson et al. 1976; Adams & Ringer 1994). One study found that roads can contribute more sediment per unit area than that from all other forestry activities, including log skidding and yarding (Gibbons and Salo 1973). Roads can affect streams directly through the acceleration of erosion and sediment loadings, the alteration of channel morphology, and changes in the runoff characteristics of watersheds. Sedimentation was often greatest when major storm events occurred immediately after construction, while surface erosion usually declined over time with revegetation of roadsides and natural stabilization (Beschta 1978). A long-term study in Caspar Creek in Mendocino County found similar results, but also a lag of sediment transport as material only moved during periods of high runoff and streamflow (Krammes and Burns 1973). In landslide prone terrain, road-related erosion could continue unless certain design, construction and maintenance practices were carried out, or high erosion hazard areas were avoided. Much of the research of logging road effects was on roads that had been constructed in the 1950's, 60's and 70's, before improved road location and design to minimize potential slope stability and erosion problems were applied. By the early 1990s, steps were being taken to minimize the negative effects of roads on streams through both construction and maintenance practices (Furniss et al. 1991; Weaver and Hagans 1994).

Channel crossings, within the riparian area, are often the primary cause of water quality problems associated with roads and the resultant ecological impacts (USFS 1976; Erman et al. 1977; Forman and Alexander 1998). Debris blockages of undersized culverts and flood flows can cause the failure of the logging road stream crossing, delivering large volumes of crossing-fill sediment directly into the channel. In a long-term erosion evaluation of the Redwood Creek watershed, researchers found significant gullying problems due to logging roads, particularly due to diversions at plugged stream culverts or ditch relief culverts (Hagans et al. 1986). These diversions created complex channel networks and increased downslope drainage density, yet 80% of all gully erosion was avoidable, the authors stated, through minor changes in road construction techniques.

Heavily used, unsurfaced logging roads also can produce significantly more sediment and turbidity than abandoned roads, with one study in Washington State showing a 130 fold increase (Reid and Dunne 1984). Road surface sediment can drain into roadside ditches and then into streams, delivering fine sediment detectable by turbidity sampling below the road (Bilby et al. 1989). The problem can be effectively minimized, the authors noted, by draining the ditch onto the forest floor in small quantities to infiltrate, by using better road construction and surfacing material, and by leaving woody debris within the stream. Ketcheson and Megahan (1996) evaluated the potential sediment filtration effectiveness of the riparian zone below road fills and culverts in granitic terrain, finding that road sediment travel distance increased with increasing volume of eroded material.

In some locations, road placement within the stream riparian zone can encroach on the floodplain and channel and force streamflows to the opposite bank, potentially destabilizing the hillslope and causing increased landsliding. Roads located within the landslide-prone inner valley gorge, where very steep slopes are adjacent to streams, are at high risk of frequent or iterative failure (Furniss et al. 1991). A study in the Klamath Mountains of northwestern California noted this relationship (Wolfe 1982). If roads must be located in a valley bottom, a buffer strip of natural vegetation between the road and the stream is recommended (Furniss et al. 1991).

High quality roads and better maintenance are likely to reduce the amount of material supplied to channels from hillslopes, reduce the amount of sediment mobilized along low order streams, and reduce the sediment delivery rate to high order streams (Furniss et al. 1991; Slaymaker 2000). In the past decade, methods to inventory logging road drainages for their potential to deliver sediment have become more standardized (Flanagan et al. 1998; CDFG 2006). Road erosion studies need to be examined in the context of geology and soil types, such as the highly erosive granitics (e.g., Megahan and Kidd 1972).

Some studies have compared the effects of old to new forest practices. Cafferata and Spittler (1998) compared the effects of logging in the 1970s to the 1990s in the Caspar Creek watershed in Mendocino County found that “legacy” roads continue to be significant sources of sediment deca des after construction. Recent Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL) studies in north coastal California watersheds assessed sediment sources over multiple decades, but the analyses did not distinguish whether logging road-related sediment originated from roads constructed before or after the Forest Practice Act in 1973 (Kramer et al. 2001). However, timber operations under the “modern” Forest Practice Rules produced an estimated erosion rate one-tenth that of pre-1976 practices on a tributary of Redwood Creek (Best et al. 1995). Rice (1999) cautioned about direct comparisons of different studies with different objectives, but concluded that road-related erosion in Redwood Creek was significantly reduced due to improved road standards (e.g., better sizing and placement of culverts).  In 1999, the Scientific Review Panel on California Forest Practice Rules and Salmonid Habitat made nine recommendations on road construction and maintenance, including the removal of legacy roads within the riparian zone (Ligon et al. 1999).

## Riparian Buffers in Forest Management

The concept of using vegetation and/or obstructions to form buffer strips to minimize or retard downslope sediment movement has been applied to agricultural and forestry operations for many years (Broderson 1973; USEPA 1975). Buffer strips are defined as riparian lands maintained immediately adjacent to streams or lakes to protect water quality, fish habitat, and other resources (Belt et al. 1992). Limiting mechanical harvesting activities within streamside zones is appropriate to protect their vulnerability to compaction and physical disturbance, due to high moisture and low soil strength factors (Dwire et al. 2006).

The U.S. Forest Service adopted the Streamside Management Zone (SMZ) in the 1970s as a Best Management Practice (BMP), for closely managed harvesting, to act as an effective filter and absorptive zone for sediment, to protect channel and streambanks, and other benefits (USFS 1979). Each National Forest's Forest Plan also has Standards and Guidelines for the protection of riparian areas, including specific BMPs (Belt et al. 1992).  In 1975, the California Board of Forestry first adopted the Stream and Lake Protection Zone (SLPZs) as part of the state's Forest Practice Rules (FPRs); these riparian zone protections were later expanded by the Watercourse and Lake Protection Zone (WLPZ) in 1983, 1991 and 2000 (Berbach 2001). While the benefits of such riparian protections are not challenged, the extent of the buffer strips (i.e., upslope and upstream) to balance ecological, water quality, and management needs continues to be debated (Dwire et al. 2006).

Direct physical disturbance of stream channels and soils within the riparian area by timber harvest activities can increase sediment discharge (Everest et al. 1987). In a 1975 California field study, physical damage to streambanks during logging was caused by equipment operating through streams, by yarding and skidding timber through channels, and by removal of streamside vegetation. Failed road crossings deposited sediment into the streams, reducing the diversity of the aquatic invertebrate community (Erman et al. 1977). Grant (1988) identified a method, primarily through aerial photograph analysis, to detect possible downstream changes in riparian areas due to upstream forest management activities.

More recent studies have looked at the design of forest riparian buffer strips to protect water quality. The authors of one literature summary stated, “we cannot overemphasize the importance of maintaining the integrity of the riparian zone during harvest operations” in relation to erosion and sedimentation processes (Chamberlin et al. 1991). The use of riparian buffers and BMPs has generally decreased the negative effects of forest harvest activities on surface water quality (Belt et al. 1992; Norris 1993). However, even an intact riparian buffer strip cannot prevent significant amounts of hillslope sediment from entering a stream via overland flow (due to infiltration and saturation excess in severely disturbed soil) or from debris slides originating outside the riparian zone (Belt and O'Laughlin 1994; O’Laughlin & Belt 1995).

One area of research receiving more attention is the riparian zone within headwater and low order streams (e.g., first and second). Sediment deposited in low order streams (which tend to be Class III under FPR rules) may be delivered to high order streams (e.g., third and fourth) that are usually Class I and II. Moore (2005) summarizes the latest results of this headwater research in the Pacific Northwest. MacDonald and Coe (2007) have recently investigated the influence of headwater streams on downstream reaches in forested areas, including the connectivity and effects of sediment. These recent research papers and others on this topic need to be thoroughly examined before consensus can be reached on the conclusions.

In recent years, the use of riparian buffer zones as a management tool has increased. For public lands in the Pacific Northwest, Riparian Reserves (RR) were set aside under the Northwest Forest Plan in 1994, where silvicultural activities were not allowed for multiple reasons, including water quality (Thomas 2004). For private forest lands, stream protection zones have increased in importance and restrictions in the past decade due to the federal and state listings of anadromous salmonid species as threatened or endangered (Blinn and Kilgore 2001; Lee et al. 2004). The current WLPZ rules for California were tightened from the 1991 Rules to protect listed fish species under the “Threatened or Impaired” (T/I) Rules, adopted as Interim Rule Requirements by the BOF in 2000, based in part on the recommendations of the Scientific Review Panel (Ligon et al. 1999; Berbach 2001). Research is now needed on the effects of these newer riparian protection zones, with comparisons made to previously designated zones.

## Recent Sediment Evaluations of Forest Practices

Evaluations of forest practices producing and delivering sediment, as a nonpoint pollution source, revealed that Best Management Practice (BMP) implementation was generally good across the U.S., but cases of noncompliance persisted (especially for road and skid trail BMPs (SWRCB 1987; Binkley and Brown 1993). The authors recommended compliance and effectiveness monitoring must therefore be an ongoing activity.

The Board of Forestry's Monitoring Study Group (MSG) has overseen two recent evaluations of the effectiveness of the Board's Forest Practice Rules (FPRs). The Hillslope Monitoring Program (Cafferata and Munn 2002) evaluated monitoring results from 1996 through 2001, while the Modified Completion Report (Brandow et al. 2006) continued analysis of data from 2001 through 2004. Both studies found that: 1) the rate of compliance with the FPRs designed to protect water quality and aquatic habitat is generally high, and 2) the FPRs are highly effective in preventing erosion, sedimentation and sediment transport to channels when properly implemented. The 2006 report concluded the following:

> In most cases, Watercourse and Lake Protection Zone (WLPZ) canopy and groundcover exceeded Forest Practice Rule (FPR) standards. With rare exceptions, WLPZ groundcover exceeds 70%, patches of bare soil in WLPZs exceeding the FPR standards are rare, and erosion features within WLPZs related to current operations are uncommon. Moreover, in most cases, actual WLPZ widths were found to meet or exceed FPR standards and/or widths prescribed in the applicable THP…
>
> When properly implemented, road-related FPRs were found to be highly effective in preventing erosion, sedimentation and sediment transport to channels. Overall implementation of road-related rules was found to meet or exceed required standards 82% of the time, was marginally acceptable 14% of the time, and departed from the FPRs 4% of the time. Road-related rules most frequently cited for poor implementation were waterbreak spacing and the size, number and location of drainage structures…
>
> Watercourse crossings present a higher risk of discharge into streams than roads, because while some roads are close to streams, all watercourse crossings straddle watercourses. Overall, 64% of watercourse crossings had acceptable implementation of all applicable FPRs, while 19% had at least one feature with marginally acceptable implementation and 17% had at least one departure from the FPRs. Common deficiencies included diversion potential, fill slope erosion, culvert plugging, and scour at the outlet…

Attention has recently focused on riparian management of low order streams by management agencies, the public, and scientists. Gaps in knowledge are still being identified for the Pacific region and the diversity of riparian management standards continue to be debated (Young 2000; Moore 2005).

## What We Do Not Know or Do Not Yet Agree Upon:

- The need for buffer strips along low order (e.g., 1st, 2nd) streams to prevent or minimize the delivery of sediment to higher order streams during forestry operations.
- The amount of forest management that can be performed within a designated riparian buffer zone without accelerating sediment production and delivery.
- The sediment effects of the newer, riparian protection zones for forest management, with comparisons made to previously designated zones.
- The relevance of forest management research on sediment relationships in riparian zones in other western states to California, and the relevance of such research in California's north coastal redwood region to other region's of the state.

## Sediment Primer References


Abernethy, B. and I.D. Rutherford. 2000. The effects of riparian tree roots on the mass-stability of riverbanks. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms* 25: 921-927.

Adams, P.W. and J.O. Ringer. 1994. The effects of timber harvesting and forest roads on water quantity and quality in the Pacific Northwest: Summary and annotated bibliography. Forest Engineering Dept., Oregon State Univ.. Prepared for the Oregon Forest Resources Institute., Corvallis, OR. 147 p.

American Geological Institute (AGI). 2006. The Geoscience Handbook. AGI Data Sheets, 4th edition. Compiled by J.D. Walker and H.A. Cohen. AGI, Alexandria, VA.

Anderson, H.W., M.D. Hoover, and K.G. Reinhart. 1976. Forests and water: effects of forest management on floods, sedimentation, and water supply. U.S. Forest Service General Technical Report PSW-18.

Belt, G.H. and J. O'Laughlin. 1994. Buffer strip design for protecting water quality and fish habitat. *Western Journal of Applied Forestry*. 9(2): 41-45.

Belt, G.H., J. O'Laughlin and T. Merrill. 1992. Design of Forest Riparian Buffer Strips for the Protection of Water Quality: Analysis of Scientific Literature. Idaho Forest, Wildlife and Range Policy Analysis Group. Report No. 8. College of Forestry, Wildlife and Range Sciences. University of Idaho.

Benda, Lee and Associates. 2003. Erosion Study: Judd Creek Basin, Southern Cascades, California. Prepared for Southern Pacific Industries. Mount Shasta, CA.

Berbach, M.W. 2001. Biological background for regulatory requirements of WLPZs. Proceedings for the 22nd Forest Vegetation Management Conference. January 16-17, 2001, Redding, California. pp 83-88.

Beschta, R.L. 1978. Long-term patterns of sediment production following road construction and logging in the Oregon Coast Range. *Water Resources Research* 14:1011-1016.

Bilby, R.E., K. Sullivan, and S.H. Duncan. 1989. The generation and fate of road-surface sediment in forested watersheds in southwestern Washington. *Forest Science* 35(2):453-468.

Binkley, D. and T.C. Brown. 1993. Forest practices as nonpoint sources of pollution in North America. *Water Resources Bulletin* 29:729-740.

Bisson, P.A., J.M. Buffington, and D.R. Montgomery. 2006. Valley segments, stream reaches, and channel units. pp. 23-49 in R. Hauer, and G. Lamberti (Eds.) Methods in Stream Ecology. Elsevier Press, Amsterdam, The Netherlands.

Bjornn, T.C. and D.W. Reiser. 1991. Habitat Requirements of Salmonids in Streams. In: Influences of Forest and Rangeland Management on Salmonid Fishes and Their Habitats. *American Fisheries Society Special Publication* 19:83-138.

Blinn, C.R. and M.A. Kilgore. 2001. Riparian Management Practices: A Summary of State Guidelines*. Journal of Forestry* 99(8):11-17.

Brandow, C., Cafferata, P.H., and J.R. Munn. 2006. Modified Completion Report, Monitoring Program: Monitoring Results from 2001 through 2004. Prepared for Monitoring Study Group, California State Board of Forestry and Fire Protection. Sacramento. 94 p. http://www.bof.fire.ca.gov/pdfs/MCRFinal_Report_2006_07_7B.pdf

Broderson, J.M. 1973. Sizing buffer strips to maintain water quality. MS Thesis, University of Washington, Seattle, Washington.

Brooks, K.N., P.F. Fflolliott, H.M. Gregersen, and J.L. Thames. 1991. Hydrology and the Management of Watersheds. Iowa State Univ. Press, Ames. 392 p.

Brown, G.W. 1983. Forestry and Water Quality. 2nd Edition. College of Forestry, Oregon State Univ., Corvallis, OR.

Brown, G.W. and J.T. Krygier. 1971. Clearcut logging and sediment production in the Oregon Coast Range. *Water Resources Research* 7(5):1189-1199.

Buffington, J. M., R. D. Woodsmith, D. B. Booth, and D. R. Montgomery. 2003. Fluvial processes in Puget Sound Rivers and the Pacific Northwest. Pages 46-78 in D. R. Montgomery, S. Bolton, D. B. Booth, and L. Wall (Eds.) Restoration of Puget Sound Rivers. University of Washington Press, Seattle, WA.

Burns, J. 1972. Some effects of logging and associated road construction on northern California streams. *Trans. Am. Fish. Soc*. 101:1-17.

Cafferata, P.H., and J.R. Munn. 2002. Hillslope monitoring program: monitoring results from 1996 through 2001. Monitoring Study Group Final Report prepared for the California State Board of Forestry and Fire Protection. Sacramento, CA. 114 p. Found at: http://www.bof.fire.ca.gov/pdfs/ComboDocument_8_.pdf

Cafferata, P.H. and T.E. Spittler. 1998. Logging impacts of the 1970s vs. the 1990s in the Caspar Creek Watershed. In: R.R. Ziemer, Tech. Cord., Proceedings of the Conference on Coastal Watersheds: the Caspar Creek Story; Map 6, 1998, Ukiah, California. General Tech. Rep. PSW GTR-168. Albany, California: Pacific Southwest Research Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture. P. 103-115.

Cafferata, P.H and T.E. Spittler. 2004. Clearcut adjacency rule—petition to the California State Board of Forestry and Fire Protection dated September 10, 2003 (microclimate rule petition). Memorandum titled "Erosion and Sediment Yield," dated January 6, 2004, submitted to Mr. William Snyder, Deputy Director for Resource Management, California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection, Sacramento, CA. 17 p.

California Dept. of Fish and Game (CDFG). 2004. Recovery strategy for California coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*). Report to the California Fish and Game Commission. Sacramento.

CDFG. 2006. Upslope Erosion Inventory and Sediment Control Guidance. Part X. in: California Salmonid Stream Habitat Restoration Manual. Sacramento. 207 p.

California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection (CDF). 2005. Flood Prone Area Considerations in the Coast Redwood Zone. Riparian Protection Committee. Sacramento, CA.

Chamberlin, T.W., R.D. Harr, and F.H. Everest. 1991. Timber harvesting, silviculture, and watershed processes. In: Influences of Forest and Rangeland Management on Salmonid Fishes and Their Habitats. *American Fisheries Society Special Publication* 19:181-205.

Cordone, A.J. and D.W. Kelley. 1961. The influences of inorganic sediment on the aquatic life of streams. *California Fish and Game* 47:189-228.

Cummins, K.W. 1962. An evaluation of some techniques for the collection and analysis of benthic samples with special emphasis on lotic waters. *American Midland Naturalist* 67:477-504.

Dunaway, D., S.R. Swanson, J. Wendel, and W. Clary. 1994. The effect of herbaceous plant communities and soil textures on particle erosion of alluvial streambanks. *Geomorphology* 9:47-56.

Dwire, K.A., C.C. Rhoades, and M.K. Young. 2006. Chapter 10 – Potential Effects of Fuel Management Activities on Riparian Areas. In: Cumulative Watershed Effects of Fuels Management: A Western Synthesis. US Forest Service…

Eads, R. and J. Lewis. 2003. Turbidity threshold sampling in watershed research. In: Renards, K.G. et al. (editors). First Interagency Conference on Research in the Watersheds, 27-30 October 2003, Benson, AZ. USDA Agricultural Research Services. pp. 561-571.

Erman, D.C., J.D. Newbold, and K.B. Roby. 1977. Evaluation of streamside bufferstrips for protecting aquatic organisms. California Water Resources Center, Contribution No. 165. University of California, Davis. 48 p.

Everest, F.H., R.L. Beschta, J.C. Scrivener, K.V. Koski, J.R. Sedell, and C.J. Cederholm. 1987. "Fine Sediment and Salmonid Production: A Paradox". pp. 98-142 in: E.O. Salo and T.W. Cundy (ed.), Streamside Management: Forestry and Fishery Interactions. Contribution No. 57, Institute of Forest Resources, Univ. of Washington, Seattle.

Flanagan, S. A., M. J. Furniss, T. S. Ledwith, M. A. Love, K. Moore, and J. Ory. 1998. Methods for inventory and environmental risk assessment of road drainage crossings. Water/Road Interaction Technology Series. 9877 1809-SDTDC. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Technology and Development Program . San Dimas, CA. 52 pp.

Forman, R.T.T. and L. Alexander. 1998. Roads and their ecological effects. *Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics* 29:207-231.

Furniss, M.J., T.D. Roelofs, and C.S. Yee. 1991. Road Construction and Maintenance. In: Influences of Forest and Rangeland Management on Salmonid Fishes and Their Habitats. *American Fisheries Society Special Publication* 19:297-323.

Gibbons, D.R. and E.O. Salo. 1973. An annotated bibliography of the effects of logging on fish of the western United States and Canada. U.S. Forest Service Gen. Tech. Report PNW-10.

Gordon, N.D., T.A. McMahon, and B.L. Finlayson. 1992. Stream Hydrology: An Introduction for Ecologists. John Wiley & Sons, NY. 526 pp.

Grant, G. 1988. The RAPID technique: a new method for evaluating downstream effects of forest practices on riparian zones. Gen. Tech. Rep. PNW-GTR-220. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service. Pacific Northwest Research Station. Portland, OR. 36 pp.

Hagans, D. K., W. E. Weaver, and M. A. Madej. 1986. Long term on-site and off-site effects of logging and erosion in the Redwood Creek basin, Northern California. In: Papers presented at the American Geophysical Union meeting on cumulative effects (1985 December); National Council on Air and Streams, Tech.Bull.No. 490, pp.38-66. 29 pp.

Haupt, H.F. and W.J. Kidd, Jr. . 1965. Good logging practices reduce sedimentation in central Idaho. *Journal of Forestry* 63:664-670.

Hickin, E.J. 1984. Vegetation and river channel dynamics. *Canadian Geographer* 2:111-126.

Hupp, C.R., and Osterkamp, W.R.. 1996. Riparian vegetation and fluvial geomorphic processes. *Geomorphology* 14:277-295.

Janda, R.J. 1978. Summary of watershed conditions in the vicinity of Redwood National Park. Open-File Report 78-25. U.S. Geological Survey, Menlo Park, CA. 82 p.

Keller, E.A., MacDonald, A., Tally, T.,, and Merrit, N.J., 1995. Effects of large organic debris on channel morphology and sediment storage in selected tributaries of Redwood Creek, northwestern California: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1454, pp. P1-P29.

Kelsey, H.M. 1980. A sediment budget and an analysis of geomorphic process in the Van Duzen River basin, north coastal California, 1941-1975. *Geological Society of America Bulletin* 91:1119-1216.

Ketcheson, G.L. and W.F. Megahan. 1996. Sediment production and downslope sediment transport from forest roads in granitic watersheds. USDA Forest Service, Intermountain Research Station, Ogden, UT. Res. Pap. INT-RP-486. 11 p.

Kramer, S. H., M. Trso, and N. P. Hume. 2001. Timber harvest and sediment loads in nine Northern California watersheds based on recent total maximum daily load (TMDL) studies. *Watershed Management Council Networker* 10(1):1, 17-24. 40 pp.

Krammes, J.S. and D.M. Burns. 1973. Road construction on Caspar Creek watersheds. U.S. Forest Service Research Paper PSW-93. Berkeley, CA. 10 p.

Laacke, R.J. 1979. California Forest Soils. Div. of Agricultural Sciences, U.C. Cooperative Extension. Publication 4094. Berkeley, CA. 181 p.

Lee, P., C. Smyth, and S. Boutin. 2004. Quantitative review of riparian buffer width guidelines from Canada and the United States. *Journal of Environmental Management* 70:165-180.

Leopold, L.B. 1994. A View of the River. Harvard Univ. Press, Cambridge, Mass. 298 p.

Leopold, L.B., M.G. Wolman, and J.P. Miller. 1964. Fluvial Processes in Geomorphology. W.H. Freeman & Co., San Francisco, CA. 522 p.

Ligon, F., A. Rich, G. Rynearson, D. Thornburgh, and W. Trush. 1999. Report of the scientific review panel on California Forest Practice Rules and salmonid habitat. Prepared for the California Resources Agency and the National Marine Fisheries Service. Sacramento, CA. 181 pp.

MacDonald, L., A.W. Smart, and R.C. Wissmar. 1991. Monitoring Guidelines to Evaluate Effects of Forestry Activities on Streams in the Pacific Northwest and Alaska. EPA 910/9-91-001. US Environmental Protection Agency, Seattle. 166 p.

Madej, M.A. 2005. The role of organic matter in sediment budgets in forested terrain. Sediment Budgets 2. IAHS Publ. 292, pp. 9-15.

Megahan, W.F. and W.J. Kidd. 1972. Impacts of logging and logging roads on erosion and sediment deposition in steep terrain. *J. Forestry* 7:136-141.

Montgomery, D.R. and J.M. Buffington. 1997. Channel reach morphology in mountain drainage basins. *Geological Society of America Bulletin* 109:596-611.

Moore, R.D. 2005. Small stream channels and their riparian zones in forested catchments of the Pacific Northwest: Introduction. *Journal of the American Water Resources Assoc*.41(4):759-761.

Morisawa, M. 1968. Streams: Their Dynamics and Morphology. McGraw-Hill, N.Y.

National Council for Air and Stream Improvement (NCASI). 2005. Riparian zone management and the protection of biodiversity: a problem analysis. Technical Bulletin No.908. 107 p. plus appendices.

Newcombe, C.P. and J.O.T. Jensen. 1996. Channel suspended sediment and fisheries: a synthesis for quantitative assessment of risk and impact. *No.Amer.J. Fish. Mgt*. 16:693-727.

Norris, R.M. and R.W. Webb. 1990. Geology of California. Second edition. John Wiley & Sons, NY. 541 p.

Norris, V. 1993. The use of buffer zones to protect water quality: a review. *Water Resources and Management* 7:257-272.

O'Laughlin, J. and G.H. Belt. 1995. Functional approaches to riparian buffer strip design. *Journal of Forestry* 93(2): 29-32.

Pollen, N. and A. Simon. 2005. Estimating the mechanical effects of riparian vegetation on stream bank stability using a fiber bundle model. *Water Resources Research* 41.

Raines, M.A. 1991. Sediment budget for the Grouse Creek Basin, Humboldt County, California. M.S. Thesis, Western Washington University. 90 p.

Reeves, G.H., L.E. Benda, K.M. Burnett, P.A. Bisson, and J.R. Sedell. 1995. A disturbance-based ecosystem approach to maintaining and restoring freshwater habitats of evolutionarily significant units of anadromous salmonids in the Pacific Northwest. Pages 334-349 In: J.L. Nielsen (editor). Evolution and the Aquatic Ecosystem: Defining Unique Units in Population Conservation. American Fisheries Society Symposium 17, Bethesda, MD.

Reid, L.M. and T. Dunne. 1984. Sediment production from forest road surfaces. *Water Resources Research* 20(11):1753-1761.

Reid, L.M. and T. Dunne. 1996. Rapid Construction of Sediment Budgets for Drainage Basins. Catena-Verlag, Germany.

Reid, L.M. and S. Hilton. 1998. Buffering the Buffer. pp. 71-80 In: R.R. Ziemer, Tech. Cord., Proceedings of the Conference on Coastal Watersheds: the Caspar Creek Story, Ukiah, California. General Tech. Rep. PSW GTR-168. Albany, California: Pacific Southwest Research Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture.

Rosetta, T. 2004. Technical basis for revising turbidity criteria. Draft. Water Quality Div., Oregon Dept. of Environmental Quality. Salem OR.

Schumm, S.A. 1977. The Fluvial System. John Wiley and Sons, New York.

Sedell, J.R. and F.J. Swanson. 1984. Ecological characteristics of streams in old-growth forests of the Pacific Northwest. Pages 9-16 In: Meehan et al. (editors), Proceedings, Fish and Wildlife Relationships in Old-Growth Forests Symposium. American Institute of Fishery Biologists, Asheville, North Carolina.

Sigler, J. W., T. C. Bjornn, and F. H. Everest. 1984. Effects of chronic turbidity on density and growth of steelheads and coho salmon. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society*. 113:142-150.

Simon, A., N. Pollen, and E. Landendoen. 2006. Influence of two woody riparian species on critical conditions for streambank stability: Upper Truckee River, California. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association* 42(1):99-113.

Slaymaker, O. 2000. Assessment of the geomorphic impacts of forestry in British Columbia. *Ambio* 29:381-387.

Sommarstrom, S., L. Kellogg, and J. Kellogg. 1990. Scott River Basin Granitic Sediment Study. Prepared for the Siskiyou Resource Conservation District and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Etna, CA. 173 p.

Spence, B.C., G.A. Lomnicky, R.M. Hughes, and R.P. Novitzki. 1996. An Ecosystem Approach to Salmonid Conservation. TR-4501-96-6057. ManTech Environmental Research Services Corp. Corvallis, OR. (Available from National Marine Fisheries Service, Portland, OR.)

State Water Resources Control Board (SWRCB). 1973. A Method for Regulating Timber Harvest and Road Construction Activity for Water Quality Protection in Northern California. Publication No. 50. Prepared by Jones and Stokes Assoc., Sacramento, CA.

State Water Resources Control Board (SWRCB). 1987. Final Report of the Forest Practice Rules Assessment Team to the SWRCB. Sacramento, CA.

Suttle, K.B., M.E. Power, J.M. Levine, and C. McNeely. 2004. How fine sediment in riverbeds impairs growth and survival of juvenile salmonids. *Ecological Applications* 14(4):969-974.

Swawnson, F.J. and C.T. Dyrness. 1975. Impact of clearcutting and road construction on soil erosion by landslides in the western Cascade Range, Oregon. *Geology* 3(7):393-397.

Swanson, F.J., R.J. Janda, T. Dunne, and D.N. Swanston. 1982a. Sediment budgets and routing in forested drainage basins. U.S. Forest Service, Gen. Tech. Rep. PNW-141, Portland, OR. 165 p.

Swanson, F.J., S.V. Gregory, J.R. Sedell, and A.G. Campbell. 1982b. Land-water interactions: the riparian zone. pp. 267-291 in: L R.L. Edmonds (ed.). Analysis of Coniferous Forest Ecosystems in the Western United States. Volume 14. Hutchinson Ross Publishing Co., Stroudsburg, PA.

Swanston, D.N. 1991. Natural Processes. pp. 139-179 In: Influences of Forest and Rangeland Management on Salmonid Fishes and Their Habitats. *American Fisheries Society Special Publication* 19.

Thomas, J.W. 2004. Sustainability of the Northwest Forest Plan: Still to be Tested. In: Forest Futures: Science, Politics, and Policy for the Next Century (edited by K.Arabas and J. Bowersox). Rowman and Littlefield, Lanham, MD. pp. 3-22.

Thorne, C.R. 1990. Effects of vegetation on riverbank erosion and stability. pp. 125-144 In: J.B. Thones (editor). Vegetation and Erosion: Processes and Environments. John Wiley & Sons.

Trimple, G.R., Jr. and R.S. Sartz. 1957. How far from a stream should a logging road be located? *J. Forestry* 55:339-341.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA). 1975. Logging roads and protection of water quality. EPA 910/9-75-007. Water Div., Region X, Seattle, Wash.

U.S. Forest Service (USFS). 1979. Water Quality Management for National Forest System Lands in California. Pacific Southwest Region. p.11.

Van Cleef, J.S. 1885. How to restore our trout streams. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society* 14:50-55.

Waters, T.F. 1995. Sediment in Streams: Sources, Biological Effects, and Control. American Fisheries Society Monograph 7. AFS, Bethesda, MD. 251 pp.

Weaver, W.E. and D.K. Hagans, 1994. Handbook for Forest and Ranch Roads: A Guide to Planning, Designing, Constructing, Reconstructing, Maintaining, and Closing Wildland Roads. Prepared for Mendocino County Resource Conservation District. Ukiah, CA. 161 p.

Wolfe, M.D. 1982. The relationship between forest management and landsliding in the Klamath Mountains of northwestern California. *Earth Resources Monograph* 11, U.S. Forest Service, Pacific Southwest Region, San Francisco.

Young, K.A. 2000. Riparian zone management in the Pacific Northwest: Who's Cutting What? *Environmental Management* 26:131-144.

Ziemer, R.R. (tech. coord.).1998. Proceedings of the Conference on Coastal Watersheds: The Caspar Creek Story; 6 May 1998; Ukiah, CA. Gen. Tech. Re[p. PSW-GTR-168. U.S. Forest Service, Pacific Southwest Research Station, Albany, CA. 149 p.

SS4/17/07

# Appendix 3E: Primer: Water Riparian Exchange Function

# Primer on Water Riparian Exchanges Related to Forest Management in the Western U.S.

Prepared by the
Technical Advisory Committee
of the
California Board of Forestry and Fire Protection

April 2008

Version 2.0

# Technical Advisory Committee Members

| | |
|---|---|
| Ms. Charlotte Ambrose | NOAA Fisheries |
| Dr. Marty Berbach | California Dept. of Fish and Game |
| Mr. Pete Cafferata | California Dept. of Forestry and Fire Protection |
| Dr. Ken Cummins | Humboldt State University, Institute of River Ecosystems |
| Dr. Brian Dietterick | Cal Poly State University, San Luis Obispo |
| Dr. Cajun James | Sierra Pacific Industries |
| Mr. Gaylon Lee | State Water Resources Control Board |
| Mr. Gary Nakamura (Chair) | University of California Cooperative Extension |
| Dr. Sari Sommarstrom | Sari Sommarstrom & Associates |
| Dr. Kate Sullivan | Pacific Lumber Company |
| Dr. Bill Trush | McBain & Trush, Inc. |
| Dr. Michael Wopat | California Geological Survey |

# Staff

| | |
|---|---|
| Mr. Christopher Zimny | California Dept. of Forestry and Fire Protection |

Prepared as background for the 2007 Scientific Literature Review of Forest Management Effects on Riparian Functions in Anadromous Salmonid Fishes for the California Board of Forestry and Fire Protection.

To be cited as:

*California Board of Forestry and Fire Protection Technical Advisory Committee (CBOF-TAC). 2007. Primer on Water Riparian Exchanges Related to Forest Management in the Western U.S. , Version 1.0. Sacramento, CA.*

## Salmonid Life-Cycle Needs Related to Water

Important habitat characteristics for salmonids in streams include minimum streamflow, obstructions to flow that create debris dams and have other effects on stream shape, and gravel necessary for spawning (Botkin and others 1994). The riparian zone along streams influences all of these factors. Streamflow, and the sediment this flow transports, interact with large wood, boulders, and bedrock outcrops to produce physical characteristics of streams required by fish, including side channels in floodplains, and pools and riffles in small main-stream channels.

The amount, velocity, and depth of water required by salmonids varies depending on the life stage. Bjornn and Reiser (1991) present a comprehensive review of this topic for North American salmonids. Migrating fish require water depths that allow upstream passage [e.g., minimum water depths of 0.09 m to 0.12 m for chum salmon, depending on substrate particle size (Sautner and others 1984)]. Streamflow affects the amount of spawning habitat available by regulating the area covered by water and the velocities and depths of water over gravel beds [e.g., velocities ranging from 0.3 to 3.0 m/s and a minimum depth of 0.18 m (Thompson 1972)]. Stream discharge, followed by water velocity, are the most important factors in determining the amount of suitable living space for rearing salmonids [e.g., velocities < 10 cm/s for newly emerged salmon and trout fry (Everest and Chapman 1972); depths ranging from water barely deep enough to cover juveniles to > 1 m (Bjornn and Reiser 1991)].[1] In general, salmonid carrying capacity increases as streamflow increases up to a point, and then levels off or declines if velocity becomes excessive (Bjornn and Reiser 1991, Murphy 1995).

Minimum streamflows in both summer and late fall are critical for juvenile rearing and successful spawning for salmonids, respectively. Murphy (1995) reported that minimum streamflow in summer limits salmonid carrying capacity on a broad scale. For example, total commercial catch of coho salmon off of Washington and Oregon was found to be directly related to the amount of summer streamflow when the juveniles were in streams two years before (Smoker 1955, Mathews and Olson 1980). Botkin and others (1994) found that streamflow, especially the minimum flow in November three and four years prior to adult returns, accounted for most of the variation in adult spring Chinook adult salmon returning to spawn in the Rogue River in Oregon.

[1] Note that in an area with numerous deep pools and cool groundwater contribution, discharge and velocity can be very low, compared to an area without pools.

## Effects of Forest Management on Peak Flows, Low Flows, and Water Yield

The effects of forest management activities on streamflow have been studied since the early 1900's and are summarized in Ziemer and Lisle (1998) and Moore and Wondzell (2005). Changes in peak flows, low flows, and water yield resulting from forest removal are very complex. The magnitude of change to both water yield and peak flows depends on the amount and location of the harvest, the stand age and composition of the vegetation removed, soil and lithologic characteristics, topography, and climatic conditions. The persistence of the effect is largely determined by the rate and composition of vegetation re-occupying the disturbed site.

In terms of aquatic habitat, key hydrologic concerns relate to changes in summer low flows, and in peak flows and their effects on channel stability and sediment transport (Moore and Wondzell 2005). In a comprehensive review of forestry impacts on aquatic habitats, Botkin and others (1994) concluded that there is no evidence or reason to believe that changes in flow due to forest harvest would be deleterious to fish. They state that increases in flood peaks would be expected to cause a slight increase in channel mobility and an increase in the transport of bed sediment (factors that relate to spawning and rearing habitat), but there do not appear to be field studies relating changes in flooding to degradation of fish habitat.

Erman et al. (1988) found, however, that winter rain-on-snow flood events in the Sierra Nevada kill young-of-the-year brook trout (a non-native species) and Paiute sculpin (a native species) due to increased bed-material transport rates. Maximum flow depth, rather than discharge, was reported as the most likely cause of the increased bedload transport rates and resulting fish mortality. Stage height was found to be higher during mid-winter storms than in spring snowmelt because high flows are constrained by snow banks that restrict overbank flow. They found varying snow depths along stream channels were related to riparian canopy, with greater depth in more open areas. Erman et al. (1988) state that increased stream-side snow depth resulting from clearcutting to the stream channel or excessively thinning riparian buffer strips may increase flood-water depths and result in adverse impacts on certain fish species during winter rain-on-snow events in the snow-dominated areas of the Sierra Nevada.

### *Peak Flow Changes*

Ziemer and Lisle (1998) provide a comprehensive description of how changes in peak flows associated with forest management vary with watershed size, type of precipitation, season, and flood magnitude. In general, the effects of forest practices are more pronounced and easier to detect in small watersheds, greater in areas where rain-on-snow events occur, greater in the fall months, and greater for frequent runoff events.  More detailed information on these principles and specific examples and are provided in the paragraphs that follow.

Substantial (e.g., ≥30-50% clearcut) harvesting in small to medium-sized watersheds[2] over short time periods is required to noticeably increase small to medium recurrence-interval peak flows associated with timber harvesting. Limited harvesting in riparian areas alone cannot affect flood frequency or magnitude.
Ziemer (1998) reported a 9 percent increase in 2-year peak flows following clearcutting approximately 50 percent of the North Fork Caspar Creek watershed (5 $km^2$), located in western Mendocino County near Fort Bragg, California.[3] Ziemer and Lisle (1998) state that: “There is little evidence that forest practices significantly affect large floods produced by rain. However, it is possible that clearcutting exacerbates some rain-on-snow floods, although the magnitude of such an effect is highly variable and difficult to measure or detect.”[4] They also explain that the greater the size of the flood or basin being investigated, the less likely that there will be any detectable changes caused by forest practices.

Specific peak flow studies in the Pacific Northwest confirm these conclusions. Thomas and Megahan (1998) found that treatment effects decreased as flow event size increased and were not detectable for flows with 2-year return intervals or greater for small treated watersheds that were either clearcut or patchcut with roads in the H.J. Andrews Experimental Forest, located in the western Cascade Mountains of Oregon in the rain-on-snow zone. Beschta and others (2000) analyzed the same data and concluded that treatment effects were unlikely for peak flows with recurrence intervals of approximately 5 years or greater, and that a relationship could not be found between forest harvesting and peak discharge in the large basins.

---

[2] Ziemer and Lisle (1998) define small basins as having drainage areas ≤ 1 $km^2$ (~250 ac) and large basins as >100 $km^2$ (~25,000 ac). Medium-sized basins can be considered be on the order of 10 $km^2$ (~2,500 ac).

[3] The WLPZ Forest Practice Rules tested in the North Fork Caspar Creek watershed were those in effect from 1983 to 1991 (e.g., Class I buffer strips of 200 ft for slopes >70%).  In 1991, maximum Class I WLPZs were reduced to 150 feet for slopes >50%.

[4] Snow accumulation tends to be higher in openings than under forest canopies, with cut blocks typically accumulating about 30 percent to 50 percent more snow.  Removal of the forest canopy exposes the snow surface to greater incident solar radiation as well as to higher wind speeds, which can increase sensible and latent heat inputs.  During mid-winter rain-on-snow events, melt rates are typically governed by sensible heat transfer from the relatively warm air, condensation of water vapor onto the snowpack, and in some cases by the sensible heat of rainfall.  Under these conditions, snowmelt may significantly augment rainfall, increasing the magnitude of flood peaks (Moore and Wondzell 2005).

In a broad summary of the literature, Moore and Wondzell (2005) reported that peak flows increased following forest harvesting in most studies in coastal catchments, with increases ranging from 13 percent to over 40 percent based on the original analyses. They also found that in coastal watersheds, the magnitude of forest practice-related peak-flow increases declined with increasing event magnitude in most cases, with the greatest increases typically associated with autumn rain events on relatively dry catchments. Moore and Wondzell (2005) state that peak flow change does not appear to be related in any simple way to the percentage of basin area cut or basal area removed, and that estimates of post-treatment recovery rates varied among studies.
Timber harvesting affects the amount of interception loss that takes place in forested watersheds. This, in turn, may influence changes in winter peak flows. Interception loss has been reported as approximately 20% in coastal California forests (Reid and Lewis 2007), and more generally as about 10 to 30 percent of total rainfall, depending on canopy characteristics and climatic conditions (Moore and Wondzell 2005). Differences in interception loss between logged and unlogged areas are likely to explain the majority of the observed increases in larger winter peak flows, when transpiration is at its annual minimum (Ziemer 1998, Lewis and others 2001).

Small increases in peak flows (≤ 10%) for 2-5 yr return interval events have been found to be relatively benign and have not been judged to be capable of substantially modifying the morphology of the stream channels (Ziemer 1998). This is due to the fact that the magnitude of peak flow changes is substantially less than the within-a-year and year-to-year variability in streamflows. The changes are within the normal range of variability of streamflows (Grant and others 1999).

In addition to harvesting effects, roads can have significant hydrologic impacts (Coe 2004). Several studies have shown that logging roads can intercept shallow subsurface flow and rapidly route it to the stream network, potentially leading to increased peak flows in headwater basins (Moore and Wondzell 2005), or possibly delayed peaks in larger watersheds due to desynchronization of peak flows from tributary basins. Pathways linking the road network to stream channels include roadside ditches draining directly to streams, and roadside ditches draining to culverts that feed water into incised gullies (Wemple and others 1996). Accelerated runoff at the road segment scale also results since haul roads have compacted surfaces with low permeability that generate overland flow in even moderate rainstorms (Coe 2004, Moore and Wondzell 2005).

At the basin scale, paired-watershed studies have not shown strong evidence to support road-induced increases in peak flows. Studies may have been hampered by insufficient pre-treatment calibration data, lack of treatment replication, and poor experimental control (i.e., road building and timber harvesting have often occurred simultaneously or in quick succession) (Thomas and Megahan 1998, Coe 2004). Modeling studies have shown that increases in peak flows due to roads were approximately equal to the effects from timber harvesting (i.e., canopy removal) in an experimental watershed in western Washington (Bowling and Lettenmaier 2001). The effect of both activities declined as the flow recurrence interval increased. Additionally, modeling studies suggest that roads can decrease baseflow during the critical summer months (Tague and Band 2001). However, much uncertainly still exists regarding the hydrologic effects of roads at the watershed scale (Coe 2004, Royer 2006). If there are impacts from road building on peak flows, these effects will be more pronounced and easier to detect in smaller basins (Ziemer and Lisle 1997).

Channel aggradation, or filling of the channel bed with sediment, can have a significant effect on flood height or flooding. Where aggradation is severe, it is more important for overbank flooding than changes in runoff due to logging operations (Lisle and others 2000). Widespread channel aggradation can occur in low gradient reaches of watersheds if the sediment production rate has been significantly accelerated above background rates by mass wasting and surface erosion and delivery processes. If this happens, similar magnitude peak flows to those which would have occurred earlier can cause more extensive over-bank flooding downstream because of reduced channel capacity. These flood events would be the consequence of rainfall/runoff/channel aggradation interactions, rather than rainfall/runoff interactions. The area flooded would be changed by the altered channel configuration, even if the amount of water remained the same.

*Low Flow Changes*

Forest removal in mountainous watersheds will increase low summer and early fall streamflows, as well as total water yield. Botkin and others (1994) reported that while total water flow in a stream is important to salmon, flow increases during summer and early fall that can augment streamflow at a critical season for juvenile rearing are more important than the changes in magnitude of total annual flow. Nearly all published reports on timber harvesting and resulting changes in summer low flows have shown that streamflow will either increase or remain unchanged in proportion to the amount of vegetation removed in the watershed. Harvested areas contain wetter soils than unlogged areas during periods of evapotranspiration, and hence higher groundwater levels and greater late-summer streamflow (Chamberlin and others 1991).

Studies have documented that the post-treatment recovery rates are highly variable depending on the severity of the treatment and the vegetation reoccupying the site, along with physiographic and climatic characteristics. Often increases are fairly short-lived, as regeneration begins to utilize surplus soil moisture and intercepts precipitation. After approximately 10-30 years, baseflow (and peak flow rates) have returned to normal or decreased below pre-harvest levels due to rapidly growing hardwoods that transpire more water than mature conifer trees (Murphy 1995, Moore and Wondzell, 2005). Long-term effects of logging on summer low flows likely depends primarily on species composition before and after harvest (Spence and others 1996, Moore and Wondzell 2005). In general, summer low flows are more sensitive to transpiration from riparian vegetation than from vegetation in the rest of the catchment (Moore and Wondzell 2005).

One example in California of documented water yield changes with both selective harvesting and clearcutting has taken place in the Caspar Creek watershed. The effects of selective logging on low flows were examined in the South Fork Caspar Creek watershed, where 64 percent of the second-growth stand volume of coast redwood and Douglas-fir was tractor logged from 1971 to 1973. Statistically significant summer low flow enhancements were evident for 7 years after logging. Minimum discharge increases averaged 38 percent after the selective harvesting and summer low flow volumes increases averaged 29% between 1972 and 1978 (Keppeler and Ziemer 1990, Rice and others 2004). The average length of the part of the low flow period when flow in the South Fork was less than 0.2 cfs was shortened by 43 days form 1972 to 1978, a 40% reduction. As in previous studies, most of the enhanced streamflow (average annual water yield) increase (approximately 90 percent) was realized during the rainy season while greater relative increases were witnessed during the summer low flow period (Keppeler 1986).

In the North Fork Caspar Creek watershed, approximately 50 percent of the watershed was clearcut harvested over about 7 years (1985 to January 1992).[5] Minimum discharge increases averaged 148 percent at the North Fork weir and flow enhancement persisted through hydrologic year 1997 with no recovery trend observed. The larger increases in the North Fork were probably due to wetter soils in the clearcut units, where little vegetation was present to use the additional moisture (Keppeler 1998). This data suggests that water yield effects will persist longer after clearcutting than when a similar timber volume is removed from a watershed with selective cutting. These differences in water yield recovery are probably related to changes in rainfall interception and evapotranspiration (Rice and others 2004). Enhanced summer low flows improve aquatic habitat in stream channels. In the Caspar Creek study, higher discharge levels increased habitat volumes and lengthened the flowing channel

[5] Most of the clearcut harvesting (45.5%) took place from the spring of 1989 to January 1992 (Henry 1998).

network along logged reaches during the summer and early fall months (Keppeler 1998).

The amount of increased water flow caused by forest management activities on summer low flows of large rivers is unknown, but Botkin and others (1994) state that based on studies extrapolated elsewhere, it is reasonable to assume that there would be a small positive effect. Given the importance of low flow increases to salmonid production, however, this change may be significant.

*Annual Water Yield Changes*

For total annual water-yield changes with forest management, most small-watershed studies have shown that in areas with significant precipitation (>100 cm/yr or ~40 in/yr), increases in streamflow are proportional to the reduction in forest cover. This is due to reduced losses from evapotranspiration by the trees in rain-dominated systems. Moore and Wondzell (2005) reported that in rain-dominated small catchments, clearcutting and patch-cutting increased yields by up to 6 mm for each percentage of basin harvested, while selective cutting increased yields by up to about 3 mm for each percentage of basal area removed. Increased water yield, however, is not uniformly distributed seasonally or throughout the rotation in the Pacific Northwest and California. Most of the annual increase occurs in the winter high-runoff season and during the wetter years, rather than during the summer season and drought years, when the additional water is needed (Ziemer 1987).[6] When vegetation reduction in a watershed is less than 20 percent, the expected water-yield increase is not measurable and the remaining trees will likely use as much water as the original stand (Bosch and Hewlett 1982).
Ziemer (1987) summarized the literature on this subject and reported that total water yield increases resulting from management in larger basins would be very small and not measurable. For example, Kattelmann and others (1983) estimated that for National Forest lands in Sierra Nevada watersheds, streamflow could only be increased one percent if multiple use/sustained yield guidelines were followed.

While there is some evidence in the arid southwestern United States that expansion of the phreatophytic riparian forests along rivers can contribute to streamflow declines (Thomas and Pool 2006), this does not appear to be a significant concern for most California watersheds with coniferous forests. For forest streams with narrow strips of riparian forest, riparian vegetation water use

[6] This was observed in areas with rain-dominated winter periods, where summer storms are infrequent, as is found in California. In contrast, experimental studies on eastern U.S. watersheds (rain-dominated) have shown that peakflow and water yield increases dominate during the growing season months, since approximately half of the annual precipitation (in the form of higher-intensity convective storms) occurs from May through October.

is usually a small portion of the overall water budget and probably has minor influence on annual water yield (Dr. Julie Stromberg, Arizona State University, Tempe, AZ, personal communication). As an example, complete felling of a strip of riparian vegetation in a small watershed at Coweeta Hydrologic Laboratory in North Carolina produced only very minor water yield increases (Hewlett and Hibbert 1961). With the limited harvesting in riparian zones that is allowed under the current forest practice rules in California, water-yield increases are not expected to be measurable.

**Stormflow Generation**

Water is transferred through riparian zones to channels by surface and subsurface flow. Shallow or lateral subsurface flow from hillslopes in steep forested watersheds in the western United States is widely recognized as a main contributor to stream flow generation; however, processes that control how and when hillslopes connect to streams are still being studied. Much of the difficulty in deciphering hillslope response in the stream is due to riparian zone modulation of these inputs (McGuire and McDonnell 2006).

A key concept for forested watersheds is that there is great temporal and spatial variability in how water is transferred to the channel. Streamflow in small forested headwater basins is usually generated from an expanding and contracting source area, often denoted as the variable source area, representing a fraction of the total basin area. The source of streamflow is usually that part of the basin nearest the perennial, intermittent, and ephemeral channels. Source areas (the hydrologically-active areas that contribute directly to stormflow) can vary from only one percent of the total basin area in small storms to 50 percent or more in very large storms. The percentage of saturated source area in a watershed is topographically sensitive (i.e., higher percentages occur with gentler slopes). The source areas within a watershed are very dynamic, expanding and contracting during events as the influx of precipitation progresses and then ends.

Moisture redistribution continues following the rain event as slower lateral hillslope drainage supplies additional moisture to lower slope positions. Direct runoff and its source area increase due to channel expansion and slope water movement (Hewlett and Nutter 1970, Troendle 1985). Riparian areas associated with perennial and larger intermittent streams remain at or near saturation during the winter and hence are hydrologically active for transporting water by saturated overland flow and rapid subsurface flow via soil macropore and/or displacement flowpaths. Smaller intermittent and ephemeral streams are only active when the hydrologic network expands sufficiently to incorporate steeper-gradient channels. Ephemeral first order channels (typically Class III watercourses) flow only in response to direct rainfall, and, although they are part of the hydrologic network, they do not generally have riparian zones because hydrophilic (water-dependent or water-loving) plants are usually absent.

**Water Exchange and Transfer within the Riparian/Floodplain Zone**

Water is exchanged in riparian zones and larger floodplains in several ways. Streams either gain water from inflow of groundwater (i.e., gaining stream—moving water from the riparian zone to the channel) or lose water by outflow to groundwater (i.e., losing stream—moving water from the channel into the riparian zone). Many streams do both, gaining in some reaches and losing in other reaches. Input of cold groundwater to the bottom of pools can be a key refugia feature for anadromous fishes in summer months (Osaki 1988).

The riparian zone has been conceptualized as a zone of transmission of ground water and hillslope water to the stream channel, as well as a direct router of precipitation and snowmelt when the riparian water table rises to the ground surface. Between storms, and even during small storms with dry antecedent conditions, subsurface inputs from adjacent hillslopes are often minimal. At these times, two-way exchanges of water between the stream and the riparian aquifer (hyporheic exchange) can become important (Moore and Wondzell 2005). The hyporheic zone is an area adjacent to the channel and below the floodplain (if present) where surface water and groundwater mix. Hyporheic zones link aquatic and terrestrial systems and serve as transition areas between surface water and groundwater systems. The hyporheic zone contains species common to both surface and subsurface systems, including a diverse community of macroinvertebrates. Few hyporheic studies have focused on unconstrained headwater streams in the Pacific Northwest. Consequently, the knowledge of hyporheic hydrology draws largely upon studies of larger, unconstrained streams.

Transpiration by vegetation in the riparian zone may extract groundwater from the riparian aquifer, producing a diurnal decrease in riparian water-table level and in streamflow, followed by recovery at night. Lundquist and Cayan (2002) report that diurnal cycles are evident in many western river records and that daily variation in streamflow is often 10-20% of the daily mean flow. Harvesting in the riparian zone can have a significant influence on riparian-zone hydrology through its effect on transpiration and water-table drawdown, potentially dampening or eliminating diurnal fluctuations in discharge and increasing low-flow discharges (Bren 1997). During extended periods of low flow, sections of small streams dry up wherever stream discharge is insufficient to both maintain continuous surface flow and satisfy water losses through the bed and banks. Stream drying may occur frequently in the headmost portions of the channel network, interrupting connectivity (Moore and Wondzell 2005). Also, forestry-related changes in channel morphology can substantially influence stream-aquifer interactions. Channel incision and simplification of channel morphology during large floods can substantially lower water tables and reduce exchange flows of water between the stream and the riparian aquifer (Wondzell and Swanson 1999).

Neither the effect of forest harvesting nor the effect of riparian buffer strips on hyporheic exchange flows has been directly examined in small headwater streams (Moore and Wondzell 2005). Moore and Wondzell (2005) hypothesize, however, that because channel morphology strongly controls hyporheic exchange, it is reasonable to assume that timber operations that lead to losses in channel complexity would reduce interactions between the stream and the riparian aquifer. In contrast, they state that efforts to minimize management impacts on channels, such as retention of riparian buffer strips, would help preserve stream-aquifer interactions. The ecological implications of decreased stream-aquifer interactions are stated as being difficult to predict with current knowledge. Moore and Wondzell (2005) report that Wondzell and Swanson's research (1996) suggests that such decreased interactions could lead to reduced nutrient cycling and reductions in stream productivity.

**Forest Management Impacts on Water Transfer/Exchange Processes**

Forest management activities include timber falling, timber yarding, road and crossing construction and use, site-preparation activities, herbicide applications, forest thinning, etc. Forest operations on a watershed-basis can influence surface and subsurface runoff in several ways. For example, decreased interception loss increases the amount of water infiltrating the soil, leading to higher water-table levels during storms (Moore and Wondzell 2005). Limited timber falling and tree removal in riparian zones alone will reduce interception loss and evapotranspiration, but will likely have little impact on streamflow (low flows, peak flows, or annual water yield), as discussed previously (note the situation discussed by Erman et al. 1988 as a possible exception). In contrast, ground-based yarding activities in riparian zones and floodplains of larger river systems can adversely impact important overflow channels used by salmonids during high winter storm discharges. Additionally, riparian areas are vulnerable to both compaction and physical disturbance during ground harvesting operations due to areas of high soil moisture and low soil strength that are common within streamside zones. These concerns, along with riparian and aquatic habitat protection, provide a basis for limiting mechanical harvesting activities within riparian zones (Dwire and others 2006).

Considerably less is known about forest management impacts associated with small headwater channels when compared to larger fish bearing watercourses. Even though streamflow is sporadic in ephemeral first order channels (typically Class III watercourses), it is capable of transporting fine sediment down to fish-bearing streams. Rashin and others (2006) found that at several study sites in Washington, delivery of sediment to unbuffered tributaries resulted in adverse impacts to fish-bearing streams that were otherwise adequately protected by riparian buffers.

Field evidence from the Caspar Creek watershed suggested that unbuffered, headwater stream channels, particularly in burned areas, contributed significantly to suspended sediment loads. Lewis and others (2001) state that sediment increases in the North Fork Caspar Creek tributaries probably could have been reduced by avoiding activities that denuded or reshaped the banks of the small headwater channels. Much of the post-harvest increases in sediment yield in the North Fork were attributed to harvest-induced storm flow volume increases (Lewis and others 2001), suggesting that the hydrologic changes can be practically and not just statistically significant (Moore and Wondzell 2005). Therefore, there is evidence that increased flows in small headwater channels, as well as disturbance of these channels, can produce increased downstream sediment transport. Further discussion of sediment delivery is provided in the California State Board of Forestry and Fire Protection's Technical Advisory Committee (TAC) Sediment Primer.

## References

Beschta, R.L., M.R. Pyles, A.E. Skaugset, and C.G. Surfleet. 2000. Peakflow response to forest practices in the western Cascades of Oregon, USA. Journal of Hydrology 233: 102-120.

Bjornn, T.C. and D.W. Reiser. 1991. Habitat requirements of salmonids in streams. American Fisheries Society Special Publication 19: 83-138.

Bodkin, D., K. Cummins, T. Dunne, H. Regier, M. Sobel, and L. Talbot. 1994. Status and future of salmon of western Oregon and northern California: findings and options. The Center for the Study of the Environment. Santa Barbara, California. 265 p.

Bosch, J.M. and J.D. Hewlett. 1982. A review of catchment experiments to determine the effect of vegetation changes on water yield and evaporation. Journal of Hydrology 55(3): 3-23. Available at: http://cwt33.ecology.uga.edu/publications/2117.pdf

Bowling, L.C. and D.P. Lettenmaier. 2001. The effects of forest roads and harvest on catchment hydrology in a mountainous maritime environment. In: Land Use and Watersheds: Human Influence on Hydrology and Geomorphology in Urban and Forest Areas. Edited by M.S. Wigmosta and S.J.
Burges. Water Science and Application 2. American Geophysical Union, Washington, DC. pp. 145-164.

Bren, L. J., 1997: Effects of slope vegetation removal on the diurnal variations of a small mountain stream. Water Resources Research 33: 321–331.

Chamberlin, T.W., R.D. Harr, and F.H. Everest. 1991. Timber harvesting, silviculture, and watershed processes. American Fisheries Society Special Publication 19:181-205.

Coe, D.B.R. 2004. The hydrologic impacts of roads at varying spatial and temporal scales: a review of published literature as of April 2004. Unpubl. Report prepared for the Upland

Processes Advisory Committee of the Committee for Cooperative Monitoring, Evaluation, and Research (CMER). Washington Department of Natural Resources, Olympia, WA. 30 p. Available at: http://www.dnr.wa.gov/forestpractices/adaptivemanagement/cmer/finalreport1-4-05.pdf

Dwire, K.A, C.C. Rhoades, and M.K. Young. 2006. Potential effects of fuel management activities on riparian areas. Chapter 10 in: Cumulative Watershed Effects of Fuels Management: A Western Synthesis. Elliot, W.J. and Audin, L.J., (Eds.). (2006, March 21--last update). DRAFT Cumulative Watershed Effects of Fuels Management in the Western United States. [Online]. Available at: http://forest.moscowfsl.wsu.edu/engr/cwe/

Erman, D.C., E.D. Andrews, and M. Yoder-Williams. 1988. Effects of winter floods on fishes in the Sierra Nevada. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 45: 2195-2200.

Everest, F.H. and D.H. Chapman. 1972. Habitat selection and spatial interaction by juvenile Chinook salmon and steelhead trout in two Idaho streams. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 29: 91-100.

Grant, G., W. Megahan, and R. Thomas. 1999. A re-evaluation of peak flows: do forest roads and harvesting cause floods? Paper presented at the 1999 NCASI West Coast Regional Meeting, Portland, OR. National Council for Air and Stream Improvement. P. 5-7 to 5-9.

Henry, N. 1998. Overview of the Caspar Creek watershed study. In: Ziemer, R.R., technical coordinator. Proceedings of the conference on coastal watersheds: the Caspar Creek story, 1998 May 6; Ukiah, CA. General Tech. Rep. PSW GTR-168. Albany, CA: Pacific Southwest Research Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 1-9. Available at: http://www.fs.fed.us/psw/publications/documents/psw_gtr168/01henry.pdf

Hewlett, J.D., and A.R. Hibbert. 1961. Increases in water yield after several types of forest cutting. Quart. Bull. Internat. Assoc. Sci. Hydrology, VI Annee, no. 3, p. 5-17.

Hewlett, J.D. and W.L. Nutter. 1970. The varying source area of streamflow from upland basins. Proceedings of the Symposium on Interdisciplinary Aspects of Watershed Management. held in Bozeman, MT. August 3-6, 1970. pp. 65-83. ASCE. New York.

Kattelmann, R.C., N.H. Berg, J. Rector. 1983. The potential for increasing streamflow from Sierra Nevada watersheds. Water Resources Bulletin 19(3): 395-402.

Keppeler, E.T. 1986. The effects of selective logging on low flows and water yield in a coastal stream in northern California. M.S. Thesis. Humboldt State University, Arcata, California. 137 p. Available at:
http://www.fs.fed.us/psw/publications/keppeler/KeppelerMS.pdf

Keppeler, E.T. 1998. The summer flow and water yield response to timber harvest. In: Ziemer, R.R., technical coordinator. Proceedings from the Conference on Coastal Watersheds: the Caspar Creek Story, May 6, 1998, Ukiah, CA. General Tech. Rep. PSW GTR–168. Albany, CA: Pacific Southwest Research Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture. P. 35-43. Available at: http://www.fs.fed.us/psw/publications/documents/psw_gtr168/05keppeler.pdf

Keppeler, E.T. and R.R. Ziemer. 1990. Logging effects on streamflow: water yields and summer low flows at Caspar Creek in northwestern California. Water Resources Research 26(7): 1669-1679. Available at: http://www.fs.fed.us/psw/publications/ziemer/Ziemer90a.PDF

Lewis, J., S.R. Mori, E.T. Keppeler, and R.R. Ziemer. 2001. Impacts of logging on storm peak flows, flow volumes and suspended sediment loads in Caspar Creek, California. In: Wigmosta, M.S. and S.J. Burges (eds.) Land Use and Watersheds: Human Influence on Hydrology and Geomorphology in Urban and Forest Areas. Water Science and Application Volume 2, American Geophysical Union. Washington, D.C. p. 85-125. Available at: http://www.fs.fed.us/psw/publications/lewis/CWEweb.pdf

Lisle, T.E., L.M. Reid, and R.R. Ziemer. 2000. Review of: Freshwater flooding analysis summary. Unpubl. report prepared by the USDA Forest Service Pacific Southwest Research Station, Redwood Sciences Laboratory, Arcata, CA. 31 p.

Lundquist, J. D. and D.R. Cayan, 2002. Seasonal and spatial patterns in diurnal cycles in streamflow in the Western United States. J. Hydrometeorology 3: 591-603. Available at: http://tenaya.ucsd.edu/~jessica/descrpaper.pdf

Mathews, S.B. and F.W. Olson. 1968. Growth rates of the char, *Salvelinus alpinus* (L.), in the Vardnes River, northern Norway. Institute of Freshwater Research, Drottningholm, Report 48: 177-186.

McGuire, K.J. and J.J. McDonnell. 2006. The role of hillslopes in stream flow response: connectivity, flow path, and transit time. Abstract. American Geophysical Union Fall Meeting 2006. San Francisco, California.

Moore, R.D. and S.M. Wondzell. 2005. Physical hydrology and the effects of forest harvesting in the Pacific Northwest: a review. Journal of the American Water Resources Association. August 2005. p. 763-784.

Murphy, M.L. 1995. Forestry impacts on freshwater habitat of anadromous salmonids in the Pacific Northwest and Alaska—requirements of protection and restoration. NOAA Coastal Ocean Program Decision Analysis Series No. 7. NOAA Coastal Ocean Office, Silver Spring, MD. 156 p.

Ozaki, V. 1988. Geomorphic and hydrologic conditions for cold pool formation on Redwood Creek, California. Redwood National Park Technical Report No. 24, Redwood National Park, Arcata, Calif.

Rashin, E.B., C.J. Clishe, A.T. Loch, and J.M. Bell. 2006. Effectiveness of timber harvest practices for controlling sediment related water quality impacts. Journal of the American Water Resources Association. October 2006. pp. 1307-1327.

Reid, L.M. and J. Lewis. 2007. Rates and implications of rainfall interception in a coastal redwood forest. In: Standiford, R.B.; Giusti, G.A.; Valachovic, Y.; Zielinski, W.J., Furniss, M.J., technical editors. Proceedings of the Redwood Region Forest Science Symposium: What Does the Future Hold?, March 15–17, 2004, Rohnert Park, CA. USFS Gen. Tech. Rep. PSW-GTR-194. Albany, CA: Pacific Southwest Research Station. P. 107-117. Available at: http://www.fs.fed.us/psw/publications/documents/psw_gtr194/psw_gtr194_17.pdf

Rice, R.M., R.R. Ziemer, and J. Lewis. 2004. Evaluating forest management effects on erosion, sediment, and runoff: Caspar Creek and northwestern California. Pp. 223-238 in: G.G. Ice and J.D. Stednick (eds.), A Century of Forest and Wildland Watershed Lessons. Bethesda, Maryland: Society of American Foresters. Available at: http://www.humboldt.edu/~rrz7001/pubs/riceSAF.pdf

Royer, T.A. 2006. Scaling hydrologic impacts from road segments to a small watershed. Master of Science Thesis. Oregon State University, Corvallis, OR. 110 p.

Sautner, J.S., T. Vining, and T.A. Rundquist. 1984. An evaluation of passage conditions for adult salmon in sloughs and side channels of the middle Susitna River. Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Aquatic Habitat and Instream Flow Investigations Report 3, Chapter 6, Juneau.

Smoker, W.A. 1955. Effects of streamflow on silver salmon production in western Washington. PhD Dissertation. University of Washington, Seattle.

Spence, B.C., G.A. Lomnicky, R.M. Hughes, and R.P. Novitzki. 1996. An ecosystem approach to salmonid conservation. TR-4501-96-6057. ManTech Environmental Research Services Corp., Corvallis, OR.

Tague, C. and L. Band. 2001. Simulating the impact of road construction and forest harvesting on hydrologic response. Earth Surface Processes and Landforms. 26(2): 135-152.

Thomas, R.B. and W.F. Megahan. 1998. Peak flow responses to clear-cutting and roads in small and large basins, western Cascades, Oregon: A second opinion. Water Resources Research 34(12): 3393-3403. Available at: http://www.fsl.orst.edu/lter/pubs/webdocs/reports/pub2616.pdf

Thomas, B.E and D.R. Pool. 2006. Trends in streamflow of the San Pedro River, southeastern Arizona, and regional trends in precipitation and streamflow in southeastern Arizona and southwestern New Mexico. USGS Professional Paper No. 1712. 79 p. Available at: http://pubs.usgs.gov/pp/pp1712/pdf/pp1712.pdf

Thompson, K. 1972. Determining stream flows for fish life. Pg. 31-50 in Proceedings, instream flow requirements workshop. Pacific Northwest River Basins Commission, Vancouver, Washington.

Troendle, C.A. 1985. Variable source area models. In: M.G. Anderson and T.P. Burt, eds., Hydrological Forecasting. Chapter 12. John Wiley and Sons, Ltd. Pgs. 347-403.

Wemple, B.C., J.A. Jones, and G.E. Grant. 1996. Channel network extension by logging roads in two basins, western Cascades, Oregon. Water Resources Bulletin. 32(6): 1195-1207.

Wondzell, S.M. and F.J. Swanson. 1996. Seasonal and storm dynamics of the hyporheic zone of a 4$^{th}$ order mountain stream. I: Hydrologic processes. Journal of the North American Benthological Society 15: 1-19.

Wondzell, S.M. and F.J. Swanson, 1999. Floods, channel change, and the hyporheic zone. Water Resources Research 35:555-567.

Ziemer, R.R. 1987. Water yield from forests: an agnostic view. In: R.Z. Callaham and J.J. DeVries, eds., Proceedings of the California Watershed Management Conference, 18-20 November 1986, West Sacramento, California. University of California Wildland Resources Center Report No. 11. pp. 74-78. Available at: http://www.fs.fed.us/psw/publications/ziemer/Ziemer87.PDF

Ziemer, R.R. 1998. Flooding and stormflows. In: Ziemer, Robert R., technical coordinator. Proceedings of the conference on coastal watersheds: the Caspar Creek story, 1998 May 6;

Ukiah, CA. General Tech. Rep. PSW GTR-168. Albany, CA: Pacific Southwest Research Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 15-24. Available at: http://www.fs.fed.us/psw/publications/documents/gtr-168/03ziemer.pdf

Ziemer, R.R. and T.E. Lisle. 1998. Chapter 3. Hydrology. Pages 43-68, in: Naiman, R.J., and R.E. Bilby, eds. River Ecology and Management: Lessons from the Pacific Coastal Ecoregion. Springer-Verlag, N.Y. Available at: http://www.humboldt.edu/~rrz7001/pubs/Ziemer98a.PDF

PC 4/7/08

# Appendix 4.  Key Questions

# <u>KEY QUESTIONS:</u> BIOTIC AND NUTRIENT RIPARIAN EXCHANGE FUNCTION

The need to resolve uncertainties involving riparian biotic and nutrient transfers and exchanges before the available scientific information is applied to management prescriptions can be captured by one overarching question.

Once objectives have been clearly identified (e.g. faster growth rates or higher densities of juvenile salmonids), what riparian plant species mix, stand age structure, and stem density are optimal for achieving the objectives for a specific species of juvenile salmonid? These are rhetorical questions and objectives that are meant to be established by the Board, not the performing Entity. However, to the extent the performing Entity can identify these objectives in literature reviewed as part of this contract, information on objectives stated in the literature should be disclosed.

This overarching question can be resolved into specific Key Questions given below. Embedded in the answer to these Key Questions must be the following:

**A.** How does geographic setting modify the answer to the Key Question in hand?

**B.** How does stream size modify the answer to the Key Question in hand?

**C.** How does the context for comparison along a gradient from least disturbed to most disturbed modify the answer to the Key Question in hand?

**D.** How do the forest management practices being examined relate to current California forest practices in the context of the modify the answer to the Key Question in hand? and

**E.** How do the alterations of the riparian area relate to salmonid habitat quality and salmonid feeding efficiency modify the answer to the Key Question in hand?

### Questions Concerning Shading by Riparian Vegetation Cover Over, and Transfer of Nutrients Into the Stream

1. **How can management (manipulation) of the riparian area lead to the establishment and maintenance of algal stream communities most beneficial to juvenile salmonids?**

a. What riparian stand characteristics are most likely to produce light and nutrient conditions that favor a periphyton cover dominated by diatoms and single-cell or small colony green algae but will avoid (that is, remain below the threshold for) a community shift to filamentous algal forms?

[Explanation: this is based on the background that a non-filamentous diatom-green algae mix is best at supporting invertebrate scraper populations, which include important food organisms for juvenile salmonids, and that a filamentous-dominated periphyton supports few if any important invertebrate prey of juvenile salmonids.]

**Questions Concerning the Vegetative Characteristics of the Riparian Area**

**2. How can management (manipulation) of the riparian area lead to rapid processing (turnover) of riparian litter in the stream?**

a. What riparian vegetation stand characteristics are most likely to produce nutrient conditions that favor the development and rapid growth of hyphomycete fungi colonizing leaf/needle litter?

[Explanation: this is based on the background that hyphomycete fungi and associated bacteria that colonize and mineralize riparian-derived litter control the rate of utilization of the litter by shredder invertebrates and, therefore, the rate of FPOM generation. FPOM is an important component of the food of collector invertebrates which include the majority of the aquatic-based prey of juvenile salmonids.]

**3. How can management (manipulation) of the riparian area produce and maintain a mix of litter inputs that favors the components of invertebrate prey organisms to yield higher growth rates and densities of juvenile salmonids?**

a. What riparian vegetation stand characteristics are most likely to produce the best mix of fast (rapid processing rates) and slow (slow processing rates) of litter transferred to the stream?

[Explanation: this is based on the background that fast litter supports populations of invertebrates that feed and grow during the fall and winter and slow litter supports those that feed and grow during the spring and summer. Generation of FPOM from CPOM in all seasons favors year around growth and production of collector invertebrates (which include the majority of the important aquatic-based prey of juvenile salmonids), which in turn favors the growth and survival of juvenile salmonids]

**4. How can management (manipulation) of the riparian area produce and maintain a vegetation mix that favors the availability of terrestrial invertebrates to provide food for juvenile salmonids?**

a. What mix of riparian vegetation is most likely to produce the best populations of terrestrial invertebrates that are an important seasonal food source for juvenile salmonids?

[Explanation: this is based on the background that different species of vegetation have differing amounts of terrestrial invertebrates associated with their foliage, stems, and other plant parts as well as with their terrestrial litter on the forest floor. Juvenile salmonids (growth and survival) are supported directly by terrestrial insects that serve as prey, and indirectly by insect frass that forms a component of FPOM that is food for collector invertebrate populations that are prey for juvenile salmonids.]

### Questions Concerning Buffer Width

**5. What riparian buffer width is required to achieve desired conditions of algal growth (question 1), litter turnover (question 2), and invertebrate prey for juvenile salmonids (questions 3 and 4)?**

**6. What valley configurations (e.g. side slopes) and geomorphological characteristics (LWD, sediments, channel structures) set the boundaries for the buffer width required to achieve the objectives in question 5?**

a. What geomorphic channel and side slope characteristics are important in setting the width of the riparian area (buffer) that?

[Explanation: this is based on the background that the characteristics of the riparian area vegetation are responsible for transfers that influence the in-stream biology leading to the production of prey for juvenile salmonids.]

### *Questions Concerning Forest Management Practices and Natural Disturbance*

7. **Given a designated riparian buffer width necessary to achieve desired in-steam biological objectives (questions 5 and 6), what have timber operations and management practices in riparian areas have been demonstrated to favor or inhibit these objectives?**

   a. How have selective harvesting and operations at differing distances from stream channel bankfull enhanced or inhibited the development of stream invertebrate communities that favor increased growth and density of juvenile salmonids?

      [Explanation: this is based on the background that species-specific riparian vegetation cover is a good predictor of the relative abundance of liter species found in the channel. The amount of liter in the channel is a function of the channel configuration, the presence of retention structures, and the height of the litter producing vegetation. Forested stream channels that have been calibrated by known litter releases have retained most of the liter within 100 meters of the release point.]

8. **Are there regional differences in the effects of natural disturbance or forest management activities on the biotic or nutrient riparian area functions?**

   a. Do the same disturbance regimes or management activities have different effects in different regions (e.g. the coastal coast range, interior coast range, Cascade, or Klamath - Sierra Nevada)?

      [Explanation: this is based on the fact that there are significant geological, rainfall, and temperature regime differences from west to east, from low to high elevations, and from north to south.]

KC 4/17/07

# <u>KEY QUESTIONS:</u> WOOD RIPARIAN EXCHANGE FUNCTION

A significant body of literature exists documenting the relationship of forest management practices to *in-stream wood* recruitment, delivery, budgeting, and future production along riparian zones. Seeking to resolve the remaining uncertainties related to forest management effects on *in-stream wood* and the riparian zone is the emphasis of this investigation for the BOF TAC.

<u>Embedded or implied in each key question below are the following issues for the contractor's synthesis</u>:

**A**. Relationship to each of California's regions;

**B**. Context for riparian buffer strip size: stream order, stream class, topography, hydrologic regime, climate;

**C.** Context for comparisons: pristine, "optimum", legacy, or pre-harvest conditions;

**D.** Relationship of the quality of forest management practices being evaluated to current California forest practices; ability of BMPs to effectively mitigate identified problems;

**E.** Relationship of alterations to salmonid habitat quality and feeding effectiveness.

**In the following question production of potential in-stream wood means the potential for living tree(s) in or near the riparian zone to become recruited as part of the dead and down wood in the stream.**

1) **How do forest management activities or disturbances in or near the riparian zone affect the production of potential *in-stream wood*, over space and time?**

   a.) To what extent is vegetation in or near the riparian zone surrounding lower order streams (e.g. 0, $1^{st}$, $2^{nd}$) a significant source of potential *in-stream wood* in unmanaged and managed forest areas? Do these results differ for larger order streams?

   b.) What is the effect of current forest management practices, in or near riparian zones, bordering small and large order streams on production of potential *in-stream wood*? To what extent and in what ways does plant succession stage or vegetative community have an effect?

c.) To what extent and in what ways is production of potential *in-stream wood* from stream banks and flood-prone areas affected by current forest management practices?

d.) What characteristics of riparian buffer zones affect the production of potential *in-stream wood*? Is there a difference in wood production in unmanaged versus managed forests?

e.) What is the effect of current forest practices on incipiently available down wood in or near the riparian zone for in-stream wood production?

f.) How should forest management goals differ by stream order, vegetation type, and region to produce potential *in-stream wood* of the appropriate diameter size, species and other characteristics to maintain salmonid habitat over space and time? What minimum buffer widths have been shown to be effective?

g.) How can forest management practices encourage stand conditions that produce and maintain the potential for future *in-stream wood* over time?

h.) What is the effect of natural disturbance on the production of potentially available wood to the stream?

**In the following question in-stream wood delivery means the physical process by which a living tree(s) became part of the dead and down wood in the stream.**

**2) How do forest management activities or disturbances in or near the riparian zone affect the delivery of *in-stream wood* onsite and/or downstream over space and time?**

a.) To what extent and with what mechanisms are areas in or near riparian zones of lower order streams (e.g. 0, 1$^{st}$, 2$^{nd}$) a significant source of *in-stream wood* delivery in unmanaged and managed forest areas? How do these results differ for higher order streams? To what extent and with what mechanisms do low-order streams deliver *in-stream wood* to higher order, fish-bearing streams?

b.) To what extent and in what ways is *in-stream wood* delivery from stream banks and flood-prone areas affected by current forest management practices?  To what extent and in what ways does plant succession stage or vegetative community have an effect?

c.) How does forest management affect *in-stream wood* delivery to channels?

d.) What is the effect of natural disturbance on the delivery of wood to a stream?

e.) What is the effect of stand-level riparian forest conditions on *wood* delivery to streams to maintain salmonid habitat?

f.) How should forest management goals differ by stream order, vegetation type, and region to deliver *wood to the stream* of the appropriate diameter size, species and other characteristics to maintain salmonid habitat over space and time? What minimum buffer widths have been shown to be effective?

**3.) Based on the results of the above, what minimum buffer width and characteristics are shown to be needed to maintain production and delivery of wood to the stream from managed forests?**

a.) How do these results vary by geographical region and process, size of watershed, stream order, forest species mix and age, stream reach, stream habitat present, forest practices within and nearby the riparian zone, fish species, etc.?

b.) How do these results vary by forest management practices in or near the riparian zone?

C:\Gary\2007\BOFTAC2007\BOFTACWoodKeyQuestions_20April2007GN.doc

# KEY QUESTIONS: HEAT AND MICROCLIMATE RIPARIAN EXCHANGE FUNCTION

Embedded or implied in each key question below are the following issues for the contractor's synthesis:

a. Relationship to each of California's regions;
b. Context for riparian buffer strip size: stream order, stream class, topography, hydrologic regime, and climate;
c. Context for comparisons: pristine, 'optimum', legacy, or pre-harvest conditions
d. Relationship of the quality of forest management practices being evaluated to current California forest practices; ability of BMP's to effectively mitigate identified problems;
e. Relationship of temperature alterations to salmonid habitat quality

**How do forest management activities or disturbances within the riparian area affect the temperature of forest streams?**

a. What conditions of canopy structure, density, and width, influence water temperature? How might this vary with California forest types and stream size?

b. Are riparian area microclimates affected by forest management within and/or adjacent to fish-bearing streams sufficient to influence water temperature?

c. How and to what extent do temperatures in low order streams influence temperatures in downstream fish-bearing streams?

**How and where are the potential temperature effects from forest management likely to impact salmonid species of concern?**

a. Is there information from California eco-regions indicating the effects of observed temperature on salmonids?

b. Are there conditions that adequately ameliorate the occurrence of adverse temperatures?

**What bearing do the findings of this literature review have on riparian zone delineation or characteristics of riparian zones for protecting water temperature?**

# KEY QUESTIONS: SEDIMENT RIPARIAN EXCHANGE FUNCTION

Much research has occurred on the relationship of forest management practices to sediment production and delivery (see Sediment Primer). Although roads and watercourse crossings have been identified as a primary sediment source, their impacts are not the focus of this BOF-TAC effort except where appropriate within the scope of the following key questions. Seeking to resolve the remaining uncertainties related to forest management effects on sediment and the riparian zone is the emphasis of this investigation.

Embedded or implied in each key question below are the following issues for the contractor's synthesis:

A. Relationship to each of California's regions;
B. Context for riparian buffer strip size: stream order, stream class, topography, hydrologic regime, and climate;
C. Context for comparisons: pristine, 'optimum', legacy, or pre-harvest conditions;
D. Relationship of the quality of forest management practices being evaluated to current California forest practices; ability of BMPs to effectively mitigate identified problems;
E. Relationship of sediment alterations to salmonid habitat quality and feeding effectiveness.

1) **How do forest management activities or disturbances in or near the riparian zone affect the production of sediment over space and time?**
    a) To what extent and with what mechanisms are zero and low-order streams (e.g., first- and second-order) and their riparian zones a significant source of sediment production in unmanaged and managed forest areas?
    b) How effective are current forest management practices in or near the riparian zone in mitigating the production of sediment in higher-order streams (e.g., third-order and higher)?
    c) To what extent and in what ways is sediment production from channels, streambanks and flood-prone areas affected by current forest management practices? Does plant succession stage or vegetative community have any effect?

2) **How do forest management activities or disturbances in or near the riparian zone affect the delivery and storage of sediment over space and time?**

a) To what extent and with what mechanisms are zero and low-order streams (e.g., first- and second-order) a significant source of sediment delivery in unmanaged and managed forest areas?
b) How effective are current forest management practices in mitigating the delivery of sediment in higher-order streams (e.g., third-order and higher)?
c) To what extent and in what ways is sediment delivery from channels and streambanks and storage on flood-prone areas affected by current forest management practices? Does plant succession stage or vegetative community have any effect?
d) Are there forest practices that can remobilize the sediment deposited within the riparian zone and flood-prone areas and redeliver into the stream system?
e) How effective are riparian buffer zones in providing a sediment filtering function in unmanaged and managed forest areas?

**3) Based on the results of the above, what riparian zone delineation or characteristics (e.g., cover, plant species and structure, etc.) are shown to be needed to ameliorate sediment production and delivery from managed forests?**

a) Is there a threshold or degree of effectiveness based on benefit (e.g., channel and streambank stability, upslope filtration, surface stability in floodprone areas, sediment storage due to hydraulic roughness)?
b) How does effectiveness vary by geographical region, geology, size of watershed, vegetation, stream reach, forest practices within and nearby the zone, etc.?
c) What are the types of erosion events for which buffer zones are not effective in preventing or reducing sediment delivery and those for which they are relatively effective?

SS 3/23/07

# KEY QUESTIONS: WATER RIPARIAN EXCHANGE FUNCTION

Embedded or implied in each key question below are the following issues for the contractor's synthesis:

A. Relationship to each of California's regions;
B. Context for riparian buffer strip size: stream order, stream class, topography, hydrologic regime, climate;
C. Context for comparisons: pristine, 'optimum', legacy, or pre-harvest conditions;
D. Relationship of the quality of forest management practices being evaluated to current California forest practices; ability of BMPs to effectively mitigate identified problems;
E. Relationship of alterations to salmonid habitat quality and feeding effectiveness.

1. **How do forest management activities or disturbances in or near riparian zones/floodplains and adjacent to small headwater first and second order channels affect flow pathways and streamflow generation?**

    a) Have forest management activities in riparian zones for higher order channels with floodplains and adjacent to small headwater first and second order channels been shown to alter water transfer to stream channels, affecting near-stream and flood prone area functions (e.g., source area contributions to stormflow, bank instability, lateral and vertical channel migration, flow obstruction or diversion of flow)?
    b) Have forest management activities in riparian zones for higher order channels with floodplains and adjacent to small headwater first and second order channels been shown to result in changes in tree canopy/volume that significantly affects evapotranspiration and/or interception, with resultant changes in water yield, peak flows, low flows, etc.?
    c) Can forest management activities in riparian areas alter water yield, peak flows, or low flows sufficiently to affect channel morphology or the aquatic ecology of headwater streams?
    d) Can forest management activities alter water quantity in riparian zones for higher order channels with floodplains sufficiently to affect overflow/side channels that serve as refugia for fish during floods?

e) Do forest management activities in riparian zones for higher order channels with floodplains and adjacent to small headwater first and second order channels significantly affect hyporheic exchange flows?

2. **What bearing do the findings of the reviewed articles have on <u>riparian zone buffer strip delineation</u> (area influencing water transfer/exchange function) or characteristics (cover, plant species and structure, etc.)?**

   [Note that, as opposed to the large wood and heat/microclimate functions, defining a buffer strip width for water transfer is difficult, since for any given season or year, the saturated riparian zone will vary widely]

3. **Are there regional differences in the effects of forest management activities or disturbances in or near the riparian area/zone for the water transfer riparian function? Please explain.**

PC 3/22/07

# Appendix 5. Initial List of Literature Reviewed

# INITIAL LIST OF LITERATURE: BIOTIC AND NUTRIENT

Allan, J. D. 1995. Nutrient dynamic. Pp 283-303 in: Allan, J. D. Stream ecology, structure and function of running waters. Chapman & Hall, New York, NY 388p.

Cummins, K. W. 2002. Riparian-stream linkage paradigm. Verh. Internat. Verein. Limnol. 28: 49-58.

Jones, K. L., G. C. Poole, J. L. Meyer, W. Bimback, and E. A. Kramer. 2006. Quantifying expected ecological response to natural resource legislation: a case study of riparian buffers, aquatic habitat, and trout populations. Ecology and Society 11: article 15 (http://www.ecolgyand society.org/vol11/iss2/art15/)

Meyer, J.L., L.A. Kaplan, D. Newbold, D.L. Strayer, C.J. Woltemade, J.B. Zedler, R. Beilfuss, Q. Carpenter, R. Semlitch, M.C. Watlin and P.H. Zedler. 2003. Where Rivers Are Born: The Scientific Imperative for Defending Small Streams and Wetlands.
www.americanrivers.org/site/DocServer/WhereRiversAreBorn1.pdf

Meyer, J. L., D. L. Strayer, J. B. Wallace, S. L. Eggert, G. S. Helfman, and N. E. Leonard. 2007. the contribution of headwater streams to biodiversity of river networks. J. Amer. Wat. Res. Assoc. (*Feb., in press*).

Moore, D. and J. S. Richardson. 2003. Progress towards understanding the structure, function, and ecological significance of small stream channels and their riparian zones. Can. J. For. Res. 33: 1349-1351.

Nakano, S. and M. Murakami. 2001. Reciprocal subsidies: dynamic interdependence between terrestrial and aquatic food webs (forest-stream ecotone/allochthonous prey flux). Proc. Nat Acad. Sci. 98: 166-170.

Richardson, J. S. 2001. Life cycle phenology of common detritivores from a temperate rainforest stream. Hydrobiologia 455: 87-95.

Richardson, J. S., C. R. Shaughnessy, and P. G. Harrison. 2004. Litter breakdown and invertebrate association with three types of leaves in a temperate rainforest stream. Archiv. Hydrobiol. 159: 309-325.

Richardson, J. S., R. E. Bilby, and C. A. Bondar. 2006. Organic matter dynamics in small streams of the Pacific northwest. J. Amer. Wat. Res. Assoc. 41: 921-934.

Shortreed, K. R. S. and J. G. Stockner. 1983. Periphyton biomass and species composition in a coastal rainforest stream in British Columbia: effects of environmental changes caused by logging. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 40: 1887-1895.

Wilzbach, M.A., B.C. Harvey, J.L. White, and R.J. Nakamoto. 2005. Effects of riparian canopy opening and salmon carcass addition on the abundance and growth of resident salmonids. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 62: 58-67.

Wipfli, M. S. and D. P. Gregovich. 2002. Export of invertebrates and detritus from fishless headwater streams in southeastern Alaska: implications for downstream salmonid production. Freshwat. Biol. 47: 957-969.

Wipfli, M. S. and J. Musselwhite. 2004. Density of Red alder (Alnus rubra) in headwaters influences invertebrate and detritus subsidies to downstream fish habitats in Alaska. Hydrobiologia 520: 153-163.

KC 1/23/07

# INITIAL LIST OF LITERATURE : WOOD


Beechie, T. J. and T. H. Sibley (1997). "Relationships between channel characteristics, woody debris, and fish habitat in northwestern Washington streams." Transactions of the American Fisheries Society **126**: 217-229.

Benda, L. and T. Dunne (1997b). "Stochastic Forcing of Sediment Routing and Storage in Channel Networks." Water Resources Research(33): 2865-2880.

Benda, L. E. a. J. C. S. (1998). Landscape controls on wood abundance in streams. Olympia, Washington, Washington Forest Protection Association: 60.

Benda, L. E., P. Bigelow, and T.M. Worsley (2002). "Recruitment of Wood to Streams in Old-Growth and Second-Growth Redwood Forests, Northern California, U.S.A." Canadian Journal of Forest Research(32): 1460-1477.

Benda, L. E. a. J. C. S. (2003). "A quantitative framework for evaluating the mass balance of in-stream organic debris." Forest Ecology and Management 172: 1-16.

Benda, L., D. Miller, J. Sias, D. Martin, R. Bilby, C. Veldhuisen, and T. Dunne (2003). Wood Recruitment Processes and Wood Budgeting. The Ecology and Management of Wood in World Rivers. K. L. B. S.V. Gregory, and A.M. Gurnell. Bethesda, Maryland, American Fisheries Society. Symposium 37: 49-74.

Benda, L. E., D. Miller, J. C. Sias, D. Martin, R. Bilby, C. Vehldhuisen, and T. Dunne (2003). "Wood Recruitment Processes and Wood Budgeting." Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 37: 49-73.

Benda, L. (2003). Wood Recruitment to Streams; Cascades and Klamath Mountains, Northern California. Mt. Shasta, CA., Lee Benda and Associates, Inc.

Benda, L. (2005). Wood Recruitment to Streams in the Sierra Nevada Mountains, Northern and Central California, Lee Benda and Associates, Inc.

Benda, L., D. Miller, et al. (2003). Wood Recruitment Processes and Wood Budgeting. The Ecology and Management of Wood in World Rivers. K. L. B. S.V. Gregory, and A.M. Gurnell. Bethesda, Maryland, American Fisheries Society. **Symposium 37:** 49-74.

Benda, L. E. and J. C. Sias (2003). "A quantitative framework for evaluating the mass balance of in-stream organic debris." Forest Ecology and Management **172**: 1-16.

Benda, L. (2004). Wood Recruitment to Streams; Mendocino Coast, California, Lee Benda and Associates, Inc., Mt. Shasta, CA.

Benda, L. (2004). Little North Fork Noyo River Wood Budget, Mendocino County, California, Lee Bend and Associates, Inc., Mt. Shasta, CA.

Berbach, M. W. (2001). Biological Background for Regulatory Requirements of WLPZs. Forest Vegetation Management Conference, Redding, California.

Berg, N., A. Carlson, et al. (1998). "Function and dynamics of woody debris in stream reaches in the central Sierra Nevada, California." Canadian Journal of Forest Research(55): 1807-1820.

Bilby, R. E., J. Heffner, et al. (1999). "Effects of Immersion in Water on Deterioration of Wood From Five Species of Trees Used for Habitat Enhancement Projects." North American Journal of Fisheries Management(19): 687-695.

Bisson, P. A., Wondzell, S.M., Reeves, G.H., and S.V. Gregory (2003). Trends in using wood to restore aquatic habitats and fish communities in western North Amercian Rivers., American Fisheries Society: 391-406.

Bragg, D. C. and J. L. Kershner (1997). Evaluating the Long-Term Consequences of Forest Management and Stream Cleaning on Coarse Woody Debris in Small Riparian Systems of the Central Rocky Mountains. FHR Currents... Fish Habitat Relationships Technical Bulletin, USDA Forest Service. 21: 9.

Bragg, D. C. and J. L. Kershner (2004). "Sensitivity of a Riparian Large Woody Debris Recruitment Model to the Number of Contributing Banks and Tree Fall Pattern." Western Journal of Applied Forestry 19(2): 117-122.

Bragg, D. C., J. L. Kershner, et al. (2000). Modeling large woody debris recruitment for small streams of the central Rocky Mountains. Rocky Mountain Research Station General Technical Report, U.S. Forest Service.

Carlson, J. Y., C. W. Andrus, et al. (1990). "Woody debris, channel features, and macroinvertebrates of streams with logged and undisturbed riparian timber in northeastern Oregon, USA." Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 47: 1103-1111.

Cederholm, C. J., R. E. Bilby, et al. (1997). "Response of juvenile coho salmon and steelhead to placement of large woody debris in a coastal Washington stream." North American Journal of Fisheries Management(17): 947-963.

Culp, J. M., G. J. Scrimgeour, et al. (1996). "Simulated fine woody debris accumulations in a stream increase rainbow trout fry abundance." Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 125: 472-479.

Flebbe, P. A. (1999). "Trout use of woody debris and habitat in Wine Spring Creek, North Carolina." Forest Ecology and Management 114: 367-375.

Gowan, C. and K. D. Fausch (1996). "Long-term demographic responses of trout populations to habitat manipulation in six Colorado streams." Ecological Applications 6: 931-946.

Gregory, S. V., M. A. Meleason, et al. (2003). Modeling the Dynamics of Wood in Streams and Rivers. The Ecology and Management of Wood in World Rivers. K. L. B. S.V. Gregory, and A.M. Gurnell. Bethesda, Maryland, American Fisheries Society. Symposium 37: 315-336.

Harvey, B. C. (1998). "Influence of large woody debris on retention, immigration, and growth of coastal cutthroat trout (*Oncorhynchus clarki clarki*) in stream pools." Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 55: 1902-1908.

Hassan, et. Al. (August 2005). “Spatial land Temporal Dynamics of Wood in Headwater Streams of the Pacific Northwest.” Journal of American Water Resources Association (JAWA).

Hennon, P. E., M. McClellan, et al. (2002). Comparing deterioration and ecosystem function of decay-resistant and decay-susceptible species of dead trees. Symposium on Ecology and Management of Dead Wood in Western Forests, Reno, Nevada.

Hyatt, T. L. and R. J. Naiman (2001). "The Residence Time of Large Woody Debris in the Queets River, Washington." Ecological Applications 11(1): 191-202.

Keller, E. A., A. MacDonald, et al. (1995). Effects of large organic debris on channel morphology and sediment storage in selected tributaries of Redwood Creek, northwestern California. Geomorphic Processes and Aquatic Habitat in the Redwood Creek Basin, northwestern California. H. M. K. K.M. Nolan, and D.C. Maron. Vicksburg, MS, U.S. Geological Survey: P1-P29.

Lassettre, N. S. and R. R. Harris The Geomorphic and Ecological Influence of Large Woody Debris in Streams and Rivers, University of California, Berkeley: 68.

Liquori, M. K. (2006). "Post-Harvest Riparian Buffer Response: Implications for Wood Recruitment and Buffer Design." Journal of American Water Resources

Association 42(1): 177-189.

Lisle, T. E. (2002). How much dead wood in stream channels is enough? Symposium on the Ecology and Management of Dead Wood in Western Forests. Reno, Nevada, USDA Forest Service: 85-93.

Lisle, T. E. and M. B. Napolitano (1998). Effects of recent logging on the main channel of North Fork Caspar Creek. Proceedings of the conference on coastal watersheds: The Caspar Creek Story. R. R. Zeimer, USDA Forest Service: 81-86.

MacDonald, L. H. and D. Coe (in press). "Influence of Headwater Streams on Downstream Reaches in Forested Areas." Forest Science.

Marcus, W. A., R. A. Marston, et al. (2002). "Mapping the Spatial and Temporal Distribution of Woody Debris in Streams of the Greater Yellowstone Ecosystem, USA." Geomorphology 44: 323-335.

Martin, D. and L. Benda (2001). "Patterns of in-stream wood recruitment and transport at the watershed scale." Transactionsof the American Fisheries Society(130): 940-958.

Martin, D. J. (2001). "The Influence of Geomorphic Factors and Geographic Region on Large Woody Debris Loading and Fish Habitat in Alaska Coastal Streams." North American Journal of Fisheries Management 21: 429-440.

May, C. L. and R. E. Gresswell (2003). "Large Wood Recruitment and Redistribution in Headwater Streams in the Southern Oregon Coast Range, U.S.A." Canadian Journal of Forest Research(33): 1352-1362.

McDade, M. H., F. J. Swanson, et al. (1990). "Source distances for coarse woody debris entering small streams in western Oregon and Washington [USA]." Canadian Journal of Forest Research 20: 326-330.

Nakamura, F. and F. J. Swanson (2003). Dynamics of Wood in Rivers in the Context of Ecological Disturbance. The Ecology and Management of Wood in World Rivers. K. L. B. S.V. Gregory, and A.M. Gurnell. Bethesda, Maryland, American Fisheries Society. Symposium 37: 279-298.

Reeves, G. H., K. M. Burnett, et al. (2003). "Source of Large Woody Debris in the Main Stem of a Fourth-Order Watershed in Coastal Oregon." Canadian Journal of Forest Research(33): 1363-1370.

Robison, E. G. and R. L. Beschta (1990). "Characteristics of coarse woody debris for several coastal streams of southeast Alaska, USA." Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences(47): 1684-1693.

Robison, E. G. and R. L. Beschta (1990). "Identifying Trees in Riparian Areas that Can Provide Coarse Woody Debris to Streams." Forest Science(36): 790-801.

Rot, B. W., R. J. Naiman, et al. (2000). "Stream Channel Configuration, Landform, and Riparian Forest Structure in the Cascade Mountain, Washington." Canadian Journal of Fisheries Aquatic Sciences(57): 699-707.

Ruediger, R. and J. Ward (1996). Abundance and Functionof Large Woody Debris in Central Sierra Nevada Streams. USDA Forest Service FHR Currents: Fish Habitat Relationships Technical Bulletin, USDA Forest Service.

Surfleet, C. G. and R. R. Ziemer (1996). Effects of forest harvesting on large organic debris in coastal streams. Coast Redwood Forest Ecology and Management, Arcata, California, USA.

Thomson, J. (2006). "Does wood slow down "sludge dragons"? The interaction between riparian zones and debris flow in mountain landscapes." PNW Science Findings(86): 1-6.

Welty, J. J., T. Beechie, et al. (2002). "Riparian aquatic interaction simulator (RAIS): A model of riparian forest dynamics for the generation of large woody debris and shade." Forest Ecology and Management 162(2-3): 299-318.

Wing, M. G. and A. Skaugset (2002). "Relationships of Channel Characteristics, Land Ownership, and Land Use Patterns of Large Woody Debris in Western Oregon Streams." Canadian Journal of Fisheries Aquatic Sciences(59): 796-807.

Wooster, J. and S. Hilton (2004). Large Woody Debris Volumes and Accumulation Rates in Cleaned Streams in Redwood Forests in Southern Humboldt County, California. Pacific Southwest Research Station, USDA Forest Service: 14.

CJ5/11/07

# INITIAL LIST OF LITERATURE: HEAT AND MICROCLIMATE

Anderson, P.D., Larson, D.J. Larson and S.S. Chen 2007. Riparian buffer and density management influences on microclimate of young headwater forests of Western Oregon. For. Sci. 53(2): 254-269.

Cafferata, P. (1990). "Watercourse Temperature Evaluation Guide". California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection.

Danehy, R.J., C.G. Colson, K.B. Parrett, and S.D. Duke. 2005. Patterns and sources of thermal heterogeneity in small mountain streams within a forested setting. For. Ecol. Manag. 208:287-302.

Dong, J. & Chen, J., 1998. Modelling air temperature gradients across managed small streams in western Washington. J. Env. Manage., 53:309.

Erman, D.C. & Erman, N.A., 2000. Testing variability of riparian temperatures in Sierra Nevada stream basins, Davis, CA.

Fleuret, J.M., 2006. Examining effectiveness of Oregon's forest practice rules for maintaining warm-season maximum stream temperature patterns in the Oregon Coast Range. Forest Engineering, MS Thesis, Oregon State University, 130 pp.

Gomi, T., Moore, R.D. & Dhakal, A.S., 2006. Headwater stream temperature response to clear-cut harvesting with different riparian treatments, coastal British Columbia. Wat. Resour. Res. 42:W08437.

Gravelle, J.A. and T.E. Link. 2007. Influence of timber harvesting on headwater peak stream temperatures in a Northern Idaho watershed. For. Sci. 53(2): 189-205.

Ice, G., Light, J.T. & Reiter, M., 2004. Use of natural temperature patterns to identify achievable stream temperature criteria for forest streams. Western J. Applied Forestry, 19:252.

Jackson, C.R., Sturm, C.A. & Ward, J.M., 2001. Timber harvest impacts on small headwater stream channels in the coast ranges of Washington. J. Am. Wat. Res. Asso., 37:6:1533.

James, C.E., 2003. Southern exposure research project: a study evaluating the effectiveness of riparian buffers in minimizing impacts of clearcut timber harvest operations on shade-producing canopy cover, microclimate, and water temperature along a headwater stream in northern California, Ph.D Thesis, University of California, Berkeley. 274 pp.

Johnson, S.L., 2004. Factors Influencing stream temperatures in small streams: substrate effecs and a shading experiment. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci., 61:913.

Lewis, T.E., et al, 2000. Regional assessment of stream temperatures across northern California and their relationship to various landscape-level and site-specific attributes. Technical Report, Forest Science Project, Humboldt State University, Arcata, CA.

Macdonald, J.S., MacIsaac, E.A. & Herunter, H.E., 2003. The effect of variable-retention riparian buffers on water temperatures in small headwater streams in sub-boreal forest ecosystems of British Columbia. Can. J. Forest Research, 33:1371.

Madej, M.A., et al, 2006. Assessing possible thermal rearing restrictions for juvenile coho salmon (Oncorhynchus kitsuch) through thermal infrared imaging and instream monitoring, Redwood Creek, California. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci., 63:1384.

Moore, R.D., et al, 2005. Thermal regime of a headwater stream within a clear-cut, coastal British Columbia, Canada. Hydrological Processes, 19:2591.

Nelitz, M.A., MacIsaac, E.A. & Peterman, R.M., In Press. A science-based approach for identifying temperature-sensitive streams for rainbow trout. N. Am. J. of Fish. Manage. (in press).

Poole, G.C. and C.H. Berman. 2001. An ecological perspective on in-stream temperature: natural heat dynamics and mechanisms of human-caused thermal degradation. Environ. Manage. 27:787-802.

Reese, C.D. & Harvey, B.C., 2002. Temperature-dependent interactions between juvenile steelhead and Sacramento pikeminnow in laboratory streams. Trans. Am. Fish. Soc., 131:599.

Richter, A. & Kolmes, S.A., 2005. Maximum temperature limits for Chinook, coho, and chum salmon and steelhead trout in the Pacific Northwest. Reviews in Fisheries Science, 13:1:23.

Rutherford, J.C., et al, 2004. Effects of patchy shade on stream water temperature: how quickly do small streams heat and cool? Mar. Freshwater Res., 55:737.

Rykken, J.J., Chan S.S., and Modenke, A.R. 2007. Headwater riparian climate patterns under alternative forest management treatments. For. Sci. 53(2): 270-280.

Sridhar, V., A.L. Sandone, J. LaMarche, T. Dubin, and D.P. Lettenmaier. 2004. Prediction of stream temperature in forested watersheds. J. Am. Water Resourc. Assoc. 40(1):197-213.

Story, A., Moore, R.D. & Macdonald, J.S., 2003. Stream temperatures in two shaded reaches below cutblocks and logging roads: downstream cooling linked to subsurface hydrology. Can. J. For. Res., 33:1383-1396.

Sullivan, K., et al, 2000. An analysis of the effects of temperature on salmonids of the Pacific Northwest with implications for selecting temperature criteria, Portland, Oregon.

Welsh, H.H., Jr., Hodgson, G.R. & Harvey, B.C., 2001. Distribution of juvenile coho salmon in relation to water temperatures in tributaries of the Mattole River, California. N. Amer. J. Fish. Manage., 21:464.

Welty, J.J., et al, 2002. Riparian aquatic interaction simulator (RAIS): a model of riparian forest dynamics for the generation of large woody debris and shade. For. Ecol. and Manage., 162:(2-3):299.

Willey, W.S., 2004. Energetic response of juvenile coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) to varying water temperature regimes in northern Californian streams. College of Natural Resource Management, MS, Humboldt State University, 81 pp.

KS 6/15/07

# <u>INITIAL LIST OF LITERATURE:</u> SEDIMENT

Benda, L., M.H. Hassan, M. Church, and C.L. May. 2005. Geomorphology of steepland headwaters: The transition from hillslopes to channels*. J. Amer. Water Resources Assoc*. 41(4):835-851.

Benda, L., P. Bigelow, and K. Andras. 2003. Erosion Study: Judd Creek Basin, Southern Cascades, California. Prepared for Sierra Pacific Industries. Lee Benda and Associates, Mt. Shasta, CA.

Brake, D. J., Molnau, M., King, J. G. 1999. Sediment delivery below roads in the Oregon Coast Range. Final report to Rocky Mountain Research Station for Cooperative agreement No. INT-95081-RJVA, Rocky Mountain Research Station, Boise, ID, 18p.

Brandow, C., Cafferata, P.H., and J.R. Munn. 2006. Modified Completion Report, Monitoring Program: Monitoring Results from 2001 through 2004. Prepared for Monitoring Study Group, California State Board of Forestry and Fire Protection. Sacramento. 94 p. http://www.bof.fire.ca.gov/pdfs/MCRFinal_Report_2006_07_7B.pdf

Bren, L.J. 1998. The geometry of constant buffer-loading design method for humid watersheds. *Forest Ecology and Management* 110:113-125.

Cafferata, P.H., and J.R. Munn. 2002. Hillslope monitoring program: monitoring results from 1996 through 2001. Monitoring Study Group Final Report prepared for the California State Board of Forestry and Fire Protection. Sacramento, CA. 114 p. Found at: http://www.bof.fire.ca.gov/pdfs/ComboDocument_8_.pdf

Cafferata, P.H. and T.E. Spittler. 1998. Logging impacts of the 1970s vs. the 1990s in the Caspar Creek Watershed. *In:* R.R. Ziemer, Tech. Cord., Proceedings of the Conference on Coastal Watersheds: the Caspar Creek Story; Map 6, 1998, Ukiah, California. General Tech. Rep. PSW GTR-168. Albany, California: Pacific Southwest Research Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture. P. 103-115.

Cafferata, P., M. Berbach, J. Burke, J. Hendrix, R. Klamt, R. Macedo, T. Spittler, K. Vyverberg, and C. Wright-Shacklett. 2005. Flood prone area considerations in the coast redwood zone. Final Report of the Riparian Protection Committee. California Department of Forestry and Fire

Protection. Sacramento, CA. 67 p. http://www.fire.ca.gov/php/rsrc-mgt_content/downloads/RiparianProtComWhitePaperfinal.pdf

Castelle, A.J. and A.W. Johnson 2000. Riparian vegetation effectiveness. NCASI Technical Bulletin No. 799 pg. 32.

$CH_2$MHill and Western Watershed Analysts. 1999. FEMAT riparian process effectiveness curves: what is science-based and what is subjective judgment? Oregon Forest Industries Council. Salem, OR. [electronic copy available]

Coe, D. 2006. Sediment production and delivery from forest roads in the Sierra Nevada, California. M.Sc. thesis, Colorado State Univ., Fort Collin, CO. 110 p. http://www.fire.ca.gov/cdfbofdb/pdfs/DrewCoe_FinalThesis.pdf

Gallo, Kirsten, S.H. Lanigan, P. Eldred, S.N. Gordon, C. Moyer. 2005. Northwest Forest Plan – the first 10 years (1994-2003): preliminary assessment of the condition of watersheds. Gen. Tech. Rep. PNW-GTR-647. USDA Forest Service, PNW Station, Portland. 133 p.

Gomi, T. R.D. Moore, and M. Hassan. 2005. Suspended sediment dynamics in small forest streams of the Pacific Northwest. J*. Amer. Water Resources Assoc*. 41(4):877-898.

Hairston-Strang, A.B. and P.W. Adams. 2000. Riparian management area condition for timber harvests conducted before and after the 1994 Oregon water protection rules. Western *Journal of Applied Forestry* 15(3): 147-153.

Hassan, M.A., M. Church, T.E. Lisle, F. Brardinoni, L. Benda, and G.E. Grant. 2005. Sediment transport and channel morphology of small, forested streams. *J. Amer. Water Resources Assoc*.41(4):853-876.

Jackson, C.R., C.A. Sturm, and J.M. Ward. 2001. Timber harvest impacts on small headwater stream channels in the coast ranges of Washington. *JAWRA* 37(6):1533-1550.

Keppeler, E.T., J. Lewis, T.E. Lisle. 2003. Effects of forest management on streamflow, sediment yield,and erosion, Caspar Creek Experimental Watersheds. In: Renard, K.G.; McElroy, S.A.; Gburek,W.J.; Canfield, H.E.; Scott, R.L., eds. First Interagency Conference on Research in theWatersheds, October 27-30, 2003. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Agricultural Research Service; 77-82. Found at:

http://www.fs.fed.us/psw/publications/keppeler/Keppeler_Lewis_Lisle_ICRW.pdf

Keppeler, E.T., P.H. Cafferata, and W.T. Baxter. 2007. State Forest Road 600: A riparian road decommissioning case study in Jackson Demonstration State Forest. Draft. California Forestry Note No. 120. CDF, Sacramento. 21 p.

Kreutzweiser, D.P. and S.S. Capell 2001. Fine sediment deposition in streams after selective forest harvesting without riparian buffers. *Can. J. For. Res*. *31*: 2134-2142

Lee, P., C. Smyth, and S. Boutin. 2004. Quantitative review of riparian buffer width guidelines from Canada and the United States. *Journal of Environmental Management* 70: 165-180.

Lewis, J. 1998. Evaluating the impacts of logging activities on erosion and sediment transport in the Caspar Creek watersheds. In: Ziemer, R.R., technical coordinator. Proceedings of the conference on coastal watersheds: the Caspar Creek story, 1998 May 6; Ukiah, CA. General Tech. Rep. PSW GTR-168. Albany, CA: Pacific Southwest Research Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture. P. 55-69. Found at: http://www.fs.fed.us/psw/publications/documents/gtr-168/07lewis.pdf

Lewis, J., S.R. Mori, E.T. Keppeler, and R.R. Ziemer. 2001. Impacts of logging on storm peak flows, flow volumes and suspended sediment loads in Caspar Creek, California. In: M.S. Wigmosta and S.J. Burges (eds.) Land Use and Watersheds: Human Influence on Hydrology and Geomorphology in Urban and Forest Areas. Water Science and Application Volume 2, American Geophysical Union, Washington, D.C. P. 85-125. Found at: http://www.fs.fed.us/psw/publications/lewis/CWEweb.pdf

Liquori, M. 2000. Riparian buffer structure and functional dynamics: considerations for riparian design. Proceedings, AWRA's 2000 summer specialty conference: riparian ecology and management in multi-land use watersheds: August 28-31, 2000, Portland, Oregon. Middleburg, VA: American Water Resources Association, c2000. Technical publication series no. TPS 00-2: p. 411-416.

Liquori, M. and C.R. Jackson. 2001. Channel response from shrub dominated riparian communities and associated effects on salmonid habitat. *JAWRA* 37(6):1639-1651.

Lisle, T.E. and M.B. Napolitano. 1998. Effects of recent logging on the main channel of North Fork Caspar Creek. *In:* R.R. Ziemer, Tech. Cord., Proceedings of the Conference on Coastal Watersheds: the Caspar Creek Story; Map 6, 1998, Ukiah, California. General Tech. Rep. PSW GTR-168. Albany, California: Pacific Southwest Research Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture. pp. 81-85.

MacDonald, L. H., D.B. Coe, and S.E. Litschert. 2004. Assessing cumulative watershed effects in the central Sierra Nevada: hillslope measurements and catchment-scale modeling. pp 149-157. In: Murphy, D. D. and P. A. Stine, Editors. 2004. Proceedings of the Sierra Nevada Science Symposium; 2002 October 7-10; Kings Beach, CA; Gen. Tech. Rep. PSW_GTR-193. Albany, CA. Pacific Southwest Research Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 287 p. Found at: www.warnercnr.colostate.edu/frws/people/faculty/macdonald/publications/AssessingCWEintheCentralSierraNevada.pdf

MacDonald, L.H. and D. Coe. (in press 2007). Influence of headwater streams on downstream reaches in forested areas. *Forest Science*.

May, C.L. 2002. Debris flows through different forest age classes in the Central Oregon Coast Range. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association* 38(4):1097-1113.

Megahan, W.F. and G.L. Ketcheson. 1996. Predicting downslope travel of granitic sediment from forest roads in Idaho. AWRA *Water Resources Bulletin* 32:371-382.

Pacific Watershed Asssociates. 2005. Evaluation of Road Decommissioning, CDFG Fisheries Restoration Grant Program, 1998 to 2003. Prepared for the Calif. Dept. of Fish and Game. As updated. Arcata, CA.

Rashin, E.B., Clishe, C.J., Loch, A.T., and J.M. Bell. 2006. Effectiveness of timber harvest practices for controlling sediment related water quality impacts. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association* 42(5):1307-1327.

Reid, L.M and S. Hilton. 1998. Buffering the buffer. In: Ziemer, R.R., technical coordinator. Proceedings of the conference on coastal watersheds: the Caspar Creek story, 1998 May 6; Ukiah, CA. General Tech. Rep. PSW GTR-168. Albany, CA: Pacific Southwest Research Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 71-80., found at: http://www.fs.fed.us/psw/publications/documents/gtr-168/08reid.pdf

Robison, E.G. and J. Runyon. 2006. Characteristics of Streams at the End of Fish Use in Western Oregon. Final Report. Prepared for Oregon Headwaters Research Cooperative by Watersheds Northwest Inc. and BioSystems. [available in pdf]

U.S. Forest Service (USFS). 2004. Best management practices evaluation program: 1992-2002 monitoring results. Final Report. USDA Forest Service Pacific Southwest Region. Vallejo, CA. 76 p. plus Appendix.

Washington Dept. of Natural Resources. 1997. Standard methodology for conducting watershed Analysis, Module B-surface erosion; and roads module. Version 4.0. Forest Practice Board. Olympia, WA.

Young, K.A. 2000. Riparian zone management in the Pacific Northwest: Who's Cutting What? *Environmental Management* 26:131-144.

SS 3/30/07

## **<u>Initial List of Literature:</u> Water**

Beschta, R.L., M.R. Pyles, A.E. Skaugset, and C.G. Surfleet. 2000. Peakflow response to forest practices in the western Cascades of Oregon, USA. Journal of Hydrology 233: 102-120.

Disalvo, A.C. and S.C. Hart. 2002. Climatic and stream-flow controls on tree growth in a western montane riparian forest. Environmental Management 39 (5), pp. 678–691.

Dwire, K.A, C.C. Rhoades, and M.K. Young. 2006. Potential effects of fuel management activities on riparian areas. Chapter 10 in: Cumulative Watershed Effects of Fuels Management: A Western Synthesis. Elliot, W.J. and Audin, L.J., (Eds.). (2006, March 21--last update). DRAFT Cumulative Watershed Effects of Fuels Management in the Western United States. [Online]. Available: http://forest.moscowfsl.wsu.edu/engr/cwe/

Hancock, P.J. 2002. Human impacts on the stream–groundwater exchange zone. Environmental Management 29(6): 763-781.

Kasahara, T.; Wondzell, S.M. 2003. Geomorphic controls on hyporheic exchange flow in mountain streams. Water Resources Research. 39: 3–13.

Lewis, J., S.R. Mori, E.T. Keppeler, and R.R. Ziemer. 2001. Impacts of logging on storm peak flows, flow volumes and suspended sediment loads in Caspar

Creek, California. In: Wigmosta, M.S. and S.J. Burges (eds.) Land Use and Watersheds: Human Influence on Hydrology and Geomorphology in Urban and Forest Areas. Water Science and Application Volume 2, American Geophysical Union. Washington, D.C. p. 85-125.

McDonnell, J.J. 2003. Where does water go when it rains? Moving beyond the variable source area concept of rainfall-runoff response. Hydrol. Process. **17,** 1869–1875.

McDonnell, J.J., B.L. McGlynn, K. Kendall, J. Shanley, and C. Kendall. 1998. The role of near-stream riparian zones in the hydrology of steep upland catchments. Hydrology, Water Resources and Ecology in Headwaters. Proceedings of the Headwater '98 Conference at Meran/Merano, Italy, April 1998. IAHS Publ. No. 248. p. 173-180. Found at: http://www.cof.orst.edu/cof/fe/watershd/pdf/preOSU/McDonnell_et_al_role_of_riparian_IAHS_1998.pdf

Moore, R.D. and S.M. Wondzell. 2005. Physical hydrology and the effects of forest harvesting in the Pacific Northwest: a review. Journal of the American Water Resources Association. August 2005. p. 763-784.

Nilsson, C. and M. Svedmark. 2002. Basic principles and ecological consequences of changing water regimes: riparian plant communities. Environmental Management 30(4): 468-480.

Price, K, A. Suski, J. McGarvie, B. Beasley, and J. S. Richardson. 2003. Communities of aquatic insects of old-growth and clearcut coastal headwater streams of varying flow persistence. Can. J. For. Res. 33: 1416-1432.

Swanson, F.J., S.L. Johnson, S.V. Gregory, and S.A. Acker. 1998. Flood disturbance in a forested mountain landscape. Bioscience 48(9): 681-689.

Tabacchi, E., L. Lambs, H. Guilloy, A.M. Planty-Tabacchi, E. Muller, and H. Decamps. 2000. Impacts of riparian vegetation on hydrological processes. Hydrological Processes 14: 2959-2976.

USFS-PSW. 2004. Following a river wherever it goes: beneath the surface of mountain streams. Issue No. 67, October 2004. Portland, Oregon. Found at: http://www.fs.fed.us/pnw/sciencef/scifi67.pdf

Wondzell, S.M.; Swanson, F.J. 1999. Flood, channel change, and the hyporheic zone. Water Resources Research. 35: 555–567.

Ziemer, R.R. and T.E. Lisle. 1998. Chapter 3. Hydrology. Pages 43-68, in: Naiman, R.J., and R.E. Bilby, eds. River Ecology and Management: Lessons from the Pacific Coastal Ecoregion. Springer-Verlag, N.Y. http://www.humboldt.edu/~rrz7001/pubs/Ziemer98a.PDF

PC 3/27/07

## APPENDIX 6: LITERATURE REVIEW SCREENING CRITERIA

1) **Literature is in Primer:** Literature the TAC used to create the Primers generally would not be included as literature the Performing Entity would review as part of the contract.

2) **Literature in Initial List of Literature to be Reviewed:** If literature which is already listed in the "Initial List of Literature to be Reviewed" in the Appendices for each Key Riparian Function need not be duplicated.

3) **Key Riparian Function:** Literature which contributes to the Key Riparian Function topics described in the Scope of Work would be considered for review under this contract. These topics address forest riparian functions for anadromous salmonid and the effects forest management has on them.

   **or**

   **Scope of Work (SOW) Key Questions:** Literature contributes to Key Questions developed for each r Key Riparian Function topic in Scope of Work/contract.

4) **Peer Reviewed:** Literature which is "Peer Reviewed" or meets criteria for "Non Peer Reviewed" gray literature would be considered for review under this contract.

   Gray Literature inclusion criteria:
   - At least three (3) of our TAC members (with multi-stakeholder perspectives) will review each of the present gray literature papers.
   - Rate each paper on a 1 to 3 or 1 to 5 scale about its professional quality; its scientific contribution to understanding riparian functions
   - Compare how close we come in our evaluations.

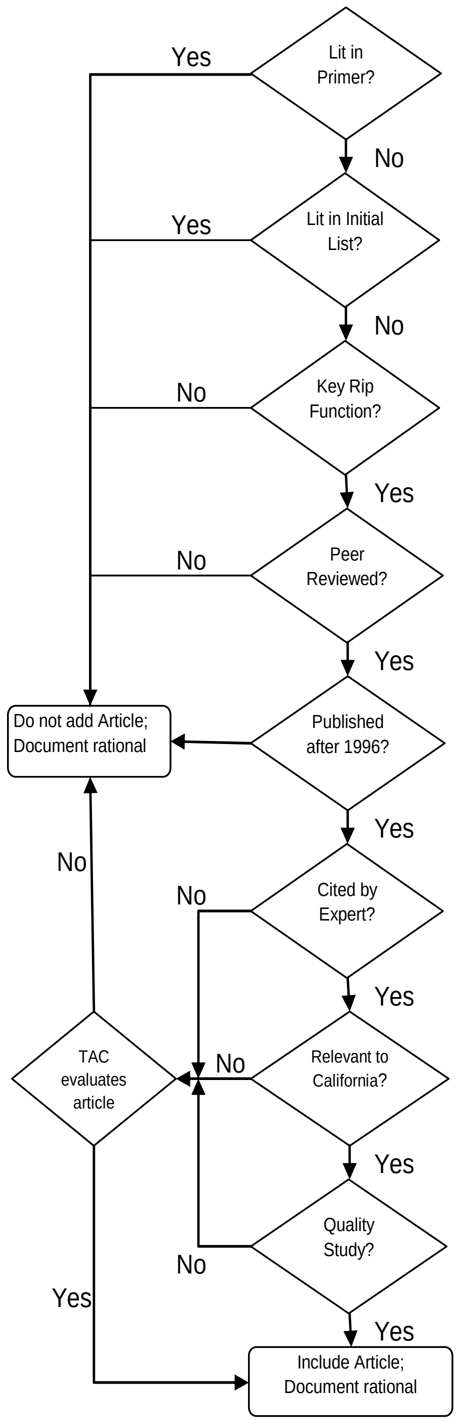
3) **Currency:** Literature which was published from 1997 to present, unless approved by Contracting Representative, would be considered for review under this contract. Literature prior to 1997 should be approved by the Contracting Representative prior to inclusion in the contract.

4) **Recommended by Expert:** Literature which was identified by experts in Top 10 list of required articles would be considered for review under this contract.

5) **Relevance to California:** Literature which applies to California or studies conducted in California would be considered for review under this contract. Relevance includes similar geomorphologic provinces or bioregions, similar topographic conditions. Geographic areas within California should be identified using Ecological Sub region terminology.

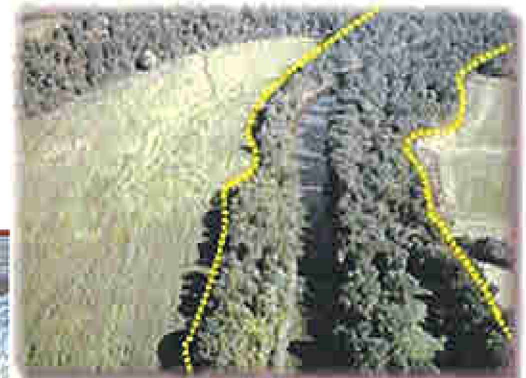
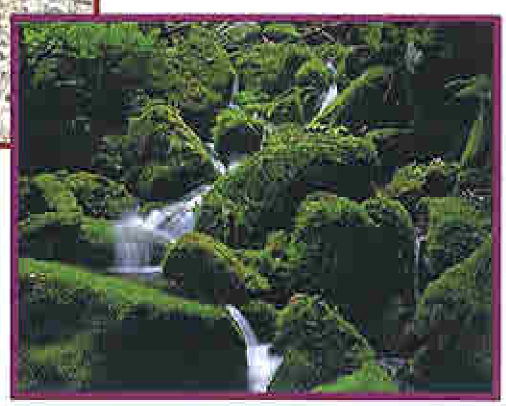
6) **Quality and Type of Study:** Literature which represents findings from large scale field experiments, models, or other descriptive studies, is data rich, theory rich, and process rich, and uses already proven study design would be considered for review under this contract.

# Literature Review Decision Tree



# Sound Watershed Consulting



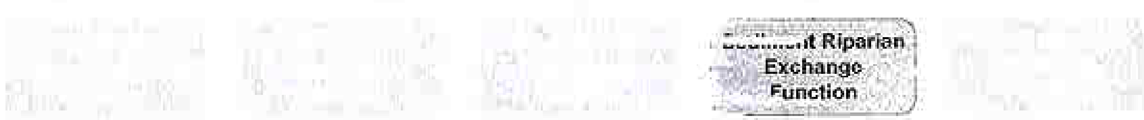



Sound Watershed Consulting

mike@soundwatershed.net

::ndscape

·evitalizing


Riparian
Exchange
Function

*"In my experience, Mike is an impressive scientist who brings innovative thinking and a solid, thorough technical approach to forestry and watershed issues."*

**Peter Heide**
**Director of Forest Management**
**Washington Forest Protection Association**